

I SHIT YOU NOT, THIS IS THE BOOK OF MORMON

An Account Written by
THE HAND OF MORMON
UPON PLATES
TAKEN FROM THE PLATES OF NEPHI
BURIED FOR 1,400 YEARS
PLACED UNDER A CLOTH
A STONE WAS PUT IN A HAT
THEN THE WORDS OF THE BOOK APPEARED IN LIGHT
AND WAS WRITTEN DOWN OVER THE COURSE OF THREE YEARS

Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites--Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile--Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation--Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed--To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof--Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile--The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven--Which is to show unto the remnant of the House of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their dads; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever--And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations--And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that you may be found spotless at the

judgment-seat of Christ.

TRANSLATED BY JOSEPH SMITH, JUN.

THE TESTIMONY OF THREE WITNESSES

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That we, through the grace of God the dad, and our Lord Jesus Christ, have seen the plates which contain this record, which is a record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites, their bros, and also of the people of Jared, who came from the tower of which we talked about. And we also know that they have been translated by the gift and power of God, for his voice hath declared it unto us; wherefore we know of a surety that the work is true. And we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates; and they have been shown unto us by the power of God, and not of man. And we declare with words of soberness, that an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engravings thereon; and we know that it is by the grace of God the dad, and our Lord Jesus Christ, that we beheld and bear record that these things are true. And it is marvelous in our eyes. Nevertheless, the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it; wherefore, to be obedient unto the commandments of God, we bear testimony of these things. And we know that if we are faithful in Christ, we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men, and be found spotless before the judgment-seat of Christ, and shall dwell with him eternally in the heavens. And the honor be to the dad, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, which is one God. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY
DAVID WHITMER

MARTIN HARRIS

THE TESTIMONY OF EIGHT WITNESSES

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That Joseph Smith, Jun., the translator of this work, has shown unto us the plates of which we talked about, which have the appearance of gold; and as many of the leaves as the said Smith has translated we did handle with our hands; and we also saw the engravings thereon, all of which has the appearance of ancient work, and of curious workmanship. And this we bear record with words of soberness, that the said Smith has shown unto us, for we have seen and hefted, and know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken. And we give our names unto the world, to witness unto the world that which we have seen. And we lie not, God bearing witness of it.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER

JACOB WHITMER

PETER WHITMER, JUN.

JOHN WHITMER

HIRAM PAGE

JOSEPH SMITH, SEN.

HYRUM SMITH

SAMUEL H. SMITH

1 Nephi

THE FIRST BOOK OF NEPHI

HIS REIGN AND MINISTRY

An account of Lehi and his wife Sariah and his four sons, being called, (beginning at the eldest) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lehi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesied unto the people concerning their iniquity

and they seek to destroy his life. He took three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi took his brothers and returned to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brothers rebel against him. He confounded them, and builded a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record.

1 Nephi 1 Chapter 1

1 Nephi 1:1

1 I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and saw many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

1 Nephi 1:2

2 I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

1 Nephi 1:3

3 And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with my own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

1 Nephi 1:4

4 For I shew unto you not in the commencement of the first year of

the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my dad, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

1 Nephi 1:5

5 Wherefore I swear to God that my dad, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

1 Nephi 1:6

6 And I shit you not as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

1 Nephi 1:7

7 And I shit you not that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

1 Nephi 1:8

8 And being overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he ought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

1 Nephi 1:9

9 And I shit you not that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

1 Nephi 1:10

10 And he also saw twelve others following him, and their

brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

1 Nephi 1:11

11 And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my dad, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

1 Nephi 1:12

12 And I shew you not that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

1 Nephi 1:13

13 And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen your abominations! and many things did my dad read concerning Jerusalem--that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

1 Nephi 1:14

14 And I shew you not that when my dad had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are your works, O Lord God Almighty! your throne is high in the heavens, and your power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth, and, because you are merciful, you will not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

1 Nephi 1:15

15 And after this manner was the language of my dad in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, which the Lord had shown unto him.

1 Nephi 1:16

16 And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things

which my dad hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spoke unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account.

1 Nephi 1:17

17 But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my dad, upon plates which I have made with my own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my dad then will I make an account of my own life.

1 Nephi 1:18

18 Therefore, I would that you should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my dad, Lehi, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

1 Nephi 1:19

19 And I shew you not that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and also the things which he read in the book, manifested plainly of the coming of the Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.

1 Nephi 1:20

20 And when the Jews heard these things they were angry with him; even as with the prophets of old, whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain; and they also sought his life, that they might take it away. but seriously dude, I, Nephi, will show unto you that the tender mercies of the Lord are over all those whom he hath chosen, because of their faith, to make them mighty even unto the power of deliverance.

1 Nephi 2 Chapter 2

1 Nephi 2:1

1 For behold, I swear to God that the Lord spoke unto my dad, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed are you Lehi, because of the things which you hast done; and because you hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away your life.

1 Nephi 2:2

2 And I shit you not that the Lord commanded my dad, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

1 Nephi 2:3

3 And I shit you not that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

1 Nephi 2:4

4 And I shit you not that he depared into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and depareed into the wilderness.

1 Nephi 2:5

5 And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mom, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

1 Nephi 2:6

6 And I shew you not that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

1 Nephi 2:7

7 And I shew you not that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

1 Nephi 2:8

8 And I shew you not that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

1 Nephi 2:9

9 And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spoke unto Laman, saying: O that you mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

1 Nephi 2:10

10 And he also spoke unto Lemuel: O that you mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

1 Nephi 2:11

11 Now this he spoke because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did complain in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

1 Nephi 2:12

12 And Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did complain

against their dad. And they did complain because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

1 Nephi 2:13

13 Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my dad.

1 Nephi 2:14

14 And I shew you not that my dad did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

1 Nephi 2:15

15 And my dad dwelt in a tent.

1 Nephi 2:16

16 And I shew you not that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; Anyways he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my dad; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

1 Nephi 2:17

17 And I spoke unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And I shew you not that he believed in my words.

1 Nephi 2:18

18 But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts

I cried unto the Lord for them.

1 Nephi 2:19

19 And I shew you not that the Lord spoke unto me, saying: Blessed are you, Nephi, because of your faith, for you have sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

1 Nephi 2:20

20 And inasmuch as you shall keep my commandments, you shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; even a land which I have prepared for you; a land which is choice above all other lands.

1 Nephi 2:21

21 And inasmuch as your brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

1 Nephi 2:22

22 And inasmuch as you shalt keep my commandments, you shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over your brethren.

1 Nephi 2:23

23 For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over your seed except they shall rebel against me also.

1 Nephi 2:24

24 And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto your seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

1 Nephi 3

Chapter 3

1 Nephi 3:1

1 And I shit you not that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my dad.

1 Nephi 3:2

2 And I shit you not that he spoke unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that you and your bros shall return to Jerusalem.

1 Nephi 3:3

3 For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my foredads, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.

1 Nephi 3:4

4 Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that you and your brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.

1 Nephi 3:5

5 And now, behold your brothers complain, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but seriously dude I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.

1 Nephi 3:6

6 Therefore go, my son, and you shalt be favored of the Lord, because you hast not complained.

1 Nephi 3:7

7 And I shit you not that I, Nephi, said unto my dad: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord gave no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commanded them.

1 Nephi 3:8

8 And I shew you not that when my dad had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.

1 Nephi 3:9

9 And I, Nephi, and my brothers took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.

1 Nephi 3:10

10 And I shew you not that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brothers did consult one with another.

1 Nephi 3:11

11 And we cast lots--who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And I shew you not that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.

1 Nephi 3:12

12 And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my dad.

1 Nephi 3:13

13 Anyways, I swear to God that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold you are a robber, and I will slay thee.

1 Nephi 3:14

14 But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brothers were about to return unto my dad in the wilderness.

1 Nephi 3:15

15 but seriously dude I said unto them that: As the Lord lived, and as we live, we will not go down unto our dad in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

1 Nephi 3:16

16 Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our dad's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord.

1 Nephi 3:17

17 For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

1 Nephi 3:18

18 For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my dad should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to run away out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he run away out of the land.

1 Nephi 3:19

19 Anyways, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our dads;

1 Nephi 3:20

20 And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.

1 Nephi 3:21

21 And I shit you not that after this manner of language did I persuade my bros, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God.

1 Nephi 3:22

22 And I shit you not that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

1 Nephi 3:23

23 And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

1 Nephi 3:24

24 And I shit you not that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

1 Nephi 3:25

25 And I shit you not that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

1 Nephi 3:26

26 And I shit you not that we did run away before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

1 Nephi 3:27

27 And I shit you not that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

1 Nephi 3:28

28 And I shit you not that Laman was angry with me, and also with my dad; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.

1 Nephi 3:29

29 And I shit you not as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spoke unto them, saying: Why do you smite your younger brother with a rod? Know you not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold you shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

1 Nephi 3:30

30 And after the angel had spoken unto us, he depareed.

1 Nephi 3:31

31 And after the angel had depareed, Laman and Lemuel again began to complain, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?

1 Nephi 4

Chapter 4

1 Nephi 4:1

1 And I shit you not that I spoke unto my bros, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, or even than his tens of thousands?

1 Nephi 4:2

2 Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spoke unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our dads came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

1 Nephi 4:3

3 Now behold you know that this is true; and you also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can you doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our dads, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.

1 Nephi 4:4

4 Now when I had spoken these words, they were yout wroth, and did still continue to complain; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came wiyout the walls of Jerusalem.

1 Nephi 4:5

5 And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves wiyout the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

1 Nephi 4:6

6 And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

1 Nephi 4:7

7 Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

1 Nephi 4:8

8 And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

1 Nephi 4:9

9 And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.

1 Nephi 4:10

10 And I shew you not that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.

1 Nephi 4:11

11 And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into your hands. and I also knew that he had sought to take away my own life; and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

1 Nephi 4:12

12 And I shew you not that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into your hands;

1 Nephi 4:13

13 Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

1 Nephi 4:14

14 And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spoke unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as your seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

1 Nephi 4:15

15 and I also ought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

1 Nephi 4:16

16 And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

1 Nephi 4:17

17 And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause--that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

1 Nephi 4:18

18 Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

1 Nephi 4:19

19 And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon my own body; even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

1 Nephi 4:20

20 And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

1 Nephi 4:21

21 And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

1 Nephi 4:22

22 And he spoke unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

1 Nephi 4:23

23 And I spoke unto him as if it had been Laban.

1 Nephi 4:24

24 And I also spoke unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder bros, who were wiyout the walls.

1 Nephi 4:25

25 And I also bade him that he should follow me.

1 Nephi 4:26

26 And he, supposing that I spoke of the bros of the cult, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

1 Nephi 4:27

27 And he spoke unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my bros, who were wiyout the walls.

1 Nephi 4:28

28 And I shit you not that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

1 Nephi 4:29

29 And I shit you not that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to run away from my presence.

1 Nephi 4:30

30 And I shew you not that when the servant of Laban beheld my brothers he began to tremble, and was about to run away from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

1 Nephi 4:31

31 And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not run away.

1 Nephi 4:32

32 And I shew you not that I spoke with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord lived, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

1 Nephi 4:33

33 And I spoke unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

1 Nephi 4:34

34 And I also spoke unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if you will go down into the wilderness to my father you shall have place with us.

1 Nephi 4:35

35 And I shew you not that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spoke. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

1 Nephi 4:36

36 Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

1 Nephi 4:37

37 And I shit you not that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

1 Nephi 4:38

38 And I shit you not that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and depareed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our dad.

1 Nephi 5

Chapter 5

1 Nephi 5:1

1 And I shit you not that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our dad, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mom, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.

1 Nephi 5:2

2 For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my dad, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold you hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.

1 Nephi 5:3

3 And after this manner of language had my mom complained against my dad.

1 Nephi 5:4

4 And it had actually fucking happen that my dad spoke unto her, saying:

I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my bros.

1 Nephi 5:5

5 but seriously dude, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.

1 Nephi 5:6

6 And after this manner of language did my dad, Lehi, comfort my mom, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

1 Nephi 5:7

7 And when we had returned to the tent of my dad, behold their joy was full, and my mom was comforted.

1 Nephi 5:8

8 And she spoke, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to run away into the wilderness; and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And so on.

1 Nephi 5:9

9 And I shit you not that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.

1 Nephi 5:10

10 And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my dad, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

1 Nephi 5:11

11 And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

1 Nephi 5:12

12 And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

1 Nephi 5:13

13 And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

1 Nephi 5:14

14 And I shew you not that my dad, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

1 Nephi 5:15

15 And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

1 Nephi 5:16

16 And my dad, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his

dads. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his dads had kept the records.

1 Nephi 5:17

17 And now when my dad saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed--

1 Nephi 5:18

18 That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.

1 Nephi 5:19

19 Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

1 Nephi 5:20

20 And I shew you not that far I and my dad had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us.

1 Nephi 5:21

21 And we had obtained the records which the Lord had commanded us, and searched them and found that they were desirable; even of great worth unto us, insomuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children.

1 Nephi 5:22

22 Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.

1 Nephi 6

Chapter 6

1 Nephi 6:1

1 And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my dads in this pare of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my dad; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

1 Nephi 6:2

2 For it sufficed me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

1 Nephi 6:3

3 And it mattered not to me that I am pareicular to give a full account of all the things of my dad, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

1 Nephi 6:4

4 For the fulness of my intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

1 Nephi 6:5

5 Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

1 Nephi 6:6

6 Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

1 Nephi 7

Chapter 7

1 Nephi 7:1

1 And now I would that you might know, that after my dad,

Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spoke unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

1 Nephi 7:2

2 And I shit you not that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my bros, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

1 Nephi 7:3

3 And I shit you not that I, Nephi, did again, with my bros, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

1 Nephi 7:4

4 And I shit you not that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

1 Nephi 7:5

5 And I shit you not that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our dad.

1 Nephi 7:6

6 And I shit you not that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their dad, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

1 Nephi 7:7

7 And I shew you not in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

1 Nephi 7:8

8 And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spoke unto them, saying, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold you are my elder brothers, and how is it that you are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that you have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, and set an example for you?

1 Nephi 7:9

9 How is it that you have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?

1 Nephi 7:10

10 How is it that you have forgotten that you have seen an angel of the Lord?

1 Nephi 7:11

11 and how is it that you have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

1 Nephi 7:12

12 and how is it that you have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

1 Nephi 7:13

13 And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and you shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath

spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

1 Nephi 7:14

14 For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceased soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my dad, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.

1 Nephi 7:15

15 Now behold, I say unto you that if you will return unto Jerusalem you shall also perish with them. And now, if you have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if you go you will also perish; for the Spirit of the Lord constrained me that I should speak.

1 Nephi 7:16

16 And I shit you not that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my bros, they were angry with me. And I shit you not to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.

1 Nephi 7:17

17 But I swear to God that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, will you deliver me from the hands of my bros; even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.

1 Nephi 7:18

18 And I shit you not that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my bros, and I spoke unto them again.

1 Nephi 7:19

19 And I shit you not that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but seriously dude, one of the daughters of Ishmael, and also her mom, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my bros, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.

1 Nephi 7:20

20 And I shit you not that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

1 Nephi 7:21

21 And I shit you not that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And I shit you not that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our dad.

1 Nephi 7:22

22 And I shit you not that we did come down unto the tent of our dad. And after I and my bros and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my dad, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

1 Nephi 8 Chapter 8

1 Nephi 8:1

1 And I shit you not that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of

the seeds of fruit of every kind.

1 Nephi 8:2

2 And I shit you not that while my dad tarried in the wilderness he spoke unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.

1 Nephi 8:3

3 Anyways, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

1 Nephi 8:4

4 but seriously dude, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, meought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.

1 Nephi 8:5

5 And I shit you not that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

1 Nephi 8:6

6 And I shit you not that he spoke unto me, and bade me follow him.

1 Nephi 8:7

7 And I shit you not that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.

1 Nephi 8:8

8 And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.

1 Nephi 8:9

9 And I shew you not after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.

1 Nephi 8:10

10 And I shew you not that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

1 Nephi 8:11

11 And I shew you not that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

1 Nephi 8:12

12 And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

1 Nephi 8:13

13 And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

1 Nephi 8:14

14 And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mom Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

1 Nephi 8:15

15 And I shit you not that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and pareake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.

1 Nephi 8:16

16 And I shit you not that they did come unto me and pareake of the fruit also.

1 Nephi 8:17

17 And I shit you not that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and pareake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast my eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

1 Nephi 8:18

18 And I shit you not that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and pareake of the fruit.

1 Nephi 8:19

19 And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

1 Nephi 8:20

20 And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

1 Nephi 8:21

21 And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

1 Nephi 8:22

22 And I shit you not that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

1 Nephi 8:23

23 And I shit you not that there arose a mist of darkness; even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

1 Nephi 8:24

24 And I shit you not that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and pareake of the fruit of the tree.

1 Nephi 8:25

25 And after they had pareaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

1 Nephi 8:26

26 And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

1 Nephi 8:27

27 And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were pareaking of the fruit.

1 Nephi 8:28

28 And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

1 Nephi 8:29

29 And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my dad.

1 Nephi 8:30

30 But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.

1 Nephi 8:31

31 And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way towards that great and spacious building.

1 Nephi 8:32

32 And I shew you not that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.

1 Nephi 8:33

33 And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.

1 Nephi 8:34

34 These are the words of my dad: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.

1 Nephi 8:35

35 And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my dad.

1 Nephi 8:36

36 And I shew you not after my dad had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

1 Nephi 8:37

37 And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and not cast them off; my dad did preach unto them.

1 Nephi 8:38

38 And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

1 Nephi 9

Chapter 9

1 Nephi 9:1

1 And all these things did my dad see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

1 Nephi 9:2

2 And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after my own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

1 Nephi 9:3

3 Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I

should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

1 Nephi 9:4

4 Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

1 Nephi 9:5

5 Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

1 Nephi 9:6

6 But the Lord knowed all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepared a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And it is. Amen.

1 Nephi 10

Chapter 10

1 Nephi 10:1

1 And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with my account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my dad, and also of my bros.

1 Nephi 10:2

2 For behold, I swear to God after my dad had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spoke unto them concerning the Jews--

1 Nephi 10:3

3 That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

1 Nephi 10:4

4 even six hundred years from the time that my dad left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews--even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

1 Nephi 10:5

5 And he also spoke concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

1 Nephi 10:6

6 Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

1 Nephi 10:7

7 And he spoke also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord--

1 Nephi 10:8

8 even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare you the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom you know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spoke my dad concerning this thing.

1 Nephi 10:9

9 And my dad said he should baptize in Bedabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that

he should baptize the Messiah with water.

1 Nephi 10:10

10 And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

1 Nephi 10:11

11 And I shew you not after my dad had spoken these words he spoke unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

1 Nephi 10:12

12 even my dad spoke much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive-tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

1 Nephi 10:13

13 Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

1 Nephi 10:14

14 And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive-tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

1 Nephi 10:15

15 And after this manner of language did my dad prophesy and speak unto my bros, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in my other book.

1 Nephi 10:16

16 And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my dad dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.

1 Nephi 10:17

17 And I shew you not after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my dad, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spoke by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God--and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come--I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.

1 Nephi 10:18

18 For he is the same yester day, to-day, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

1 Nephi 10:19

19 For he that diligently seeked shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

1 Nephi 10:20

20 Therefore remember, O man, for all your doings you shalt be brought into judgment.

1 Nephi 10:21

21 Wherefore, if you have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then you are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, you must be cast off forever.

1 Nephi 10:22

22 And the Holy Ghost gived authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

1 Nephi 11

Chapter 11

1 Nephi 11:1

1 For I shew you not after I had desired to know the things that my dad had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in my heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

1 Nephi 11:2

2 And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest you?

1 Nephi 11:3

3 And I said: I desire to behold the things which my dad saw.

1 Nephi 11:4

4 And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that your dad saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

1 Nephi 11:5

5 And I said: you knowest that I believe all the words of my dad.

1 Nephi 11:6

6 And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, even above all. And blessed are you, Nephi, because you believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, you shalt behold the things which you hast desired.

1 Nephi 11:7

7 Anyways this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after you hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which your dad tasted, you shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall you witness; and after you have witnessed him you shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

1 Nephi 11:8

8 And I shew you not that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my dad had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

1 Nephi 11:9

9 And I shew you not after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold you hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

1 Nephi 11:10

10 And he said unto me: What desirest you?

1 Nephi 11:11

11 And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof--for I spoke unto him as a man speake; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yout nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spoke unto me as a man speake with another.

1 Nephi 11:12

12 And I shit you not that he said unto me: Look! And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.

1 Nephi 11:13

13 And I shit you not that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazared; and in the city of Nazared I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.

1 Nephi 11:14

14 And I shit you not that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest you?

1 Nephi 11:15

15 And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.

1 Nephi 11:16

16 And he said unto me: Knowest you the condescension of God?

1 Nephi 11:17

17 And I said unto him: I know that he loved his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.

1 Nephi 11:18

18 And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom you seest is

the mom of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.

1 Nephi 11:19

19 And I shew you not that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spoke unto me, saying: Look!

1 Nephi 11:20

20 And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

1 Nephi 11:21

21 And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which your father saw?

1 Nephi 11:22

22 And I answered him, saying: it is the love of God, which shedded itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.

1 Nephi 11:23

23 And he spoke unto me, saying: and the most joyous to the soul.

1 Nephi 11:24

24 And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.

1 Nephi 11:25

25 And I shew you not that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters

are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.

1 Nephi 11:26

26 And the angel said unto me again: Look the
condescension of God!

1 Nephi 11:27

27 And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my
dad had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should
prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and
was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the
heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and
abide upon him in the form of a dove.

1 Nephi 11:28

28 And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people,
in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered
together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from
among them.

1 Nephi 11:29

29 And I also beheld twelve others following him. And I saw you not
to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my
face, and I saw them not.

1 Nephi 11:30

30 And I saw you not that the angel spoke unto me again,
saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again,
and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they
did minister unto them.

1 Nephi 11:31

31 And he spoke unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and
I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men.

And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spoke and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.

1 Nephi 11:32

32 And I shew you not that the angel spoke unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; and I saw and bear record.

1 Nephi 11:33

33 And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

1 Nephi 11:34

34 And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

1 Nephi 11:35

35 And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my dad saw. And the angel of the Lord spoke unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

1 Nephi 11:36

36 And I shew you not that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spoke unto me again, saying: shall be the

destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

1 Nephi 12 Chapter 12

1 Nephi 12:1

1 And I shew unto you that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold your seed, and also the seed of your brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

1 Nephi 12:2

2 And I shew unto you that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

1 Nephi 12:3

3 And I shew unto you that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, even that I did not number them.

1 Nephi 12:4

4 And I shew unto you that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

1 Nephi 12:5

5 And I shew you not after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

1 Nephi 12:6

6 And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

1 Nephi 12:7

7 And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

1 Nephi 12:8

8 And the angel spoke unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto your seed.

1 Nephi 12:9

9 And he said unto me: you rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of your seed shall be judged of them; for you are of the house of Israel.

1 Nephi 12:10

10 And these twelve ministers whom you beholdest shall judge your seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

1 Nephi 12:11

11 And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

1 Nephi 12:12

12 And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

1 Nephi 12:13

13 And I shew you not that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

1 Nephi 12:14

14 And the angel said unto me: Behold your seed, and also the seed of your brethren.

1 Nephi 12:15

15 And I shew you not that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

1 Nephi 12:16

16 And the angel spoke unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which your father saw; even the river of which he spoke; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.

1 Nephi 12:17

17 And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blinded the eyes, and hardened the hearts of the children of men, and led them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.

1 Nephi 12:18

18 And the large and spacious building, which your father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divided them; even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning

of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.

1 Nephi 12:19

19 And while the angel spoke these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my bros did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my bros did overpower the people of my seed.

1 Nephi 12:20

20 And I shit you not that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my bros that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

1 Nephi 12:21

21 And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

1 Nephi 12:22

22 And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

1 Nephi 12:23

23 And I shit you not that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filyour people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

1 Nephi 13

Chapter 13

1 Nephi 13:1

1 And I shit you not that the angel spoke unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

1 Nephi 13:2

2 And the angel said unto me: What beholdest you? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

1 Nephi 13:3

3 And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

1 Nephi 13:4

4 And I shew unto you that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great cult.

1 Nephi 13:5

5 And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a cult which is most abominable above all other cultes, which slayeth the saints of God, and tortured them and bindeth them down, and yoked them with a yoke of iron, and brought them down into captivity.

1 Nephi 13:6

6 And I shew unto you that I beheld this great and abominable cult; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.

1 Nephi 13:7

7 And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

1 Nephi 13:8

8 And the angel spoke unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable cult.

1 Nephi 13:9

9 And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.

1 Nephi 13:10

10 And I shew you not that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.

1 Nephi 13:11

11 And I shew you not that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of your brethren.

1 Nephi 13:12

12 And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.

1 Nephi 13:13

13 And I shew you not that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

1 Nephi 13:14

14 And I shew you not that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

1 Nephi 13:15

15 And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

1 Nephi 13:16

16 And I shew you not that I, Nephi, beheld that the *Gentiles* who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

1 Nephi 13:17

17 And I beheld that their *many* *Gentiles* were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

1 Nephi 13:18

18 And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

1 Nephi 13:19

19 And I, Nephi, beheld that the *Gentiles* that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.

1 Nephi 13:20

20 And I shew you not that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

1 Nephi 13:21

21 And the angel said unto me: Knowest you the meaning of the book?

1 Nephi 13:22

22 And I said unto him: I know not.

1 Nephi 13:23

23 And he said: Behold it proceeded out of the mouth of a Jew.

And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that you beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also contained many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

1 Nephi 13:24

24 And the angel of the Lord said unto me: you hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

1 Nephi 13:25

25 Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

1 Nephi 13:26

26 And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, you seest the formation of a great and abominable cult, which is most abominable above all other cultes; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many pates which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

1 Nephi 13:27

27 And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

1 Nephi 13:28

28 Wherefore, you seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable cult, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

1 Nephi 13:29

29 And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, even across the many waters which you have seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, you seest--because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God--because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

1 Nephi 13:30

30 Nevertheless, you beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with your dad that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, you seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of your seed, which are among your bros.

1 Nephi 13:31

31 Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of your bros.

1 Nephi 13:32

32 Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall

forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which you beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious pears of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable cult, whose formation you hast seen.

1 Nephi 13:33

33 Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.

1 Nephi 13:34

34 And I shit you not that the angel of the Lord spoke unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel--and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of your dad--wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious pears of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable cult, which is the mom of harlots, saith the Lamb--I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in my own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.

1 Nephi 13:35

35 For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto your seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after your seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of your bros, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

1 Nephi 13:36

36 And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

1 Nephi 13:37

37 And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

1 Nephi 13:38

38 And I shew you not that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my bros, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my bros.

1 Nephi 13:39

39 And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my bros, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

1 Nephi 13:40

40 And the angel spoke unto me, saying: These last records, which you hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal dad, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

1 Nephi 13:41

41 And they must come according to the words which shall be

established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of your seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

1 Nephi 13:42

42 And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

1 Nephi 14 Chapter 14

1 Nephi 14:1

1 And it shall actually fucking happen, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks--

1 Nephi 14:2

2 And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of your dad; they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

1 Nephi 14:3

3 And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable cult, which was founded by the devil and

his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell-- that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

1 Nephi 14:4

4 For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

1 Nephi 14:5

5 And I shew you not that the angel spoke unto me, Nephi, saying: you hast beheld that if the *Gentiles* repent it shall be well with them; and you also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and you also hast heard that whoso repented not must perish.

1 Nephi 14:6

6 Therefore, woe be unto the *Gentiles* if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

1 Nephi 14:7

7 For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other--either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

1 Nephi 14:8

8 And I shit you not that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest you the covenants of the dad unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, .

1 Nephi 14:9

9 And I shit you not that he said unto me: Look, that great and abominable cult, which is the mom of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

1 Nephi 14:10

10 And he said unto me: Behold there are save two cultes only; the one is the cult of the Lamb of God, and the other is the cult of the devil; wherefore, whoso belonged not to the cult of the Lamb of God belonged to that great cult, which is the mom of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

1 Nephi 14:11

11 And I shit you not that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

1 Nephi 14:12

12 And I shit you not that I beheld the cult of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the cult of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

1 Nephi 14:13

13 And I shit you not that I beheld that the great mom of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight

against the Lamb of God.

1 Nephi 14:14

14 And I shew you not that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the cult of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

1 Nephi 14:15

15 And I shew you not that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable cult, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

1 Nephi 14:16

16 And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mom of abominations, the angel spoke unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mom of harlots; Anyways, you seest all these things--

1 Nephi 14:17

17 And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mom of harlots, which is the great and abominable cult of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the devil shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

1 Nephi 14:18

18 And I shew you not that the angel spoke unto me, saying: Look!

1 Nephi 14:19

19 And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white

robe.

1 Nephi 14:20

20 And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

1 Nephi 14:21

21 Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; and also many things which have been.

1 Nephi 14:22

22 And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

1 Nephi 14:23

23 Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; Anyways they are written in the book which you beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.

1 Nephi 14:24

24 Anyways, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which you hast seen; Anyways, the remainder shalt you see.

1 Nephi 14:25

25 But the things which you shalt see hereafter you shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.

1 Nephi 14:26

26 And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to

come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

1 Nephi 14:27

27 And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

1 Nephi 14:28

28 Anyways, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficed me; and I have written but a small pare of the things which I saw.

1 Nephi 14:29

29 And I bear record that I saw the things which my dad saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

1 Nephi 14:30

30 And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And it is. Amen.

1 Nephi 15

Chapter 15

1 Nephi 15:1

1 And I shit you not that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my dad.

1 Nephi 15:2

2 And I shit you not that I beheld my bros, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things my dad had

spoken unto them.

1 Nephi 15:3

3 For he truly spoke many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

1 Nephi 15:4

4 And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably actually fucking happen because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

1 Nephi 15:5

5 And I shit you not that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that my afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

1 Nephi 15:6

6 And I shit you not that after I had received strength I spoke unto my bros, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.

1 Nephi 15:7

7 And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our dad hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive-tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

1 Nephi 15:8

8 And I said unto them: Have you inquired of the Lord?

1 Nephi 15:9

9 And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maked no such thing known unto us.

1 Nephi 15:10

10 Behold, I said unto them: How is it that you do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that you will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

1 Nephi 15:11

11 Do you not remember the things which the Lord hath said?--If you will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that you shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.

1 Nephi 15:12

12 Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive-tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our dad; Anyways are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?

1 Nephi 15:13

13 And now, the thing which our dad meant concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed--

1 Nephi 15:14

14 And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their foredads, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of

their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their dads by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

1 Nephi 15:15

15 And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? will they not come unto the true fold of God?

1 Nephi 15:16

16 Behold, I say unto you, ; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive-tree, into the true olive-tree.

1 Nephi 15:17

17 And this is what our dad meant; and he meant that it will not actually fucking happen until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meant that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

1 Nephi 15:18

18 Wherefore, our dad hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our dad Abraham, saying: In your seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

1 Nephi 15:19

19 And I shit you not that I, Nephi, spoke much unto them concerning these things; I spoke unto them concerning the

restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

1 Nephi 15:20

20 And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spoke concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And I shew you not

to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

1 Nephi 15:21

21 And I shew you not that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meant this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meant the tree which he saw?

1 Nephi 15:22

22 And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

1 Nephi 15:23

23 And they said unto me: What meant the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

1 Nephi 15:24

24 And I said unto them that it was the word of God, and those who would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

1 Nephi 15:25

25 Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they

would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

1 Nephi 15:26

26 And they said unto me: What meant the river of water which our dad saw?

1 Nephi 15:27

27 And I said unto them that the water which my dad saw was filyourss; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filyourss of the water.

1 Nephi 15:28

28 And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

1 Nephi 15:29

29 And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

1 Nephi 15:30

30 And I said unto them that our dad also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascended up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.

1 Nephi 15:31

31 And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

1 Nephi 15:32

32 And I shew unto you not that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

1 Nephi 15:33

33 Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthy they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

1 Nephi 15:34

34 but seriously dude, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthy prepared for that which is filthy.

1 Nephi 15:35

35 And there is a place prepared, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

1 Nephi 15:36

36 Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And I spake unto my

bros. Amen.

1 Nephi 16 Chapter 16

1 Nephi 16:1

1 And now I swear to God that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my bros, behold they said unto me: you hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

1 Nephi 16:2

2 And I shit you not that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taked the truth to be hard, for it cutted them to the very center.

1 Nephi 16:3

3 And now my bros, if you were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that you might walk uprightly before God, then you would not complain because of the truth, and say: you speakest hard things against us.

1 Nephi 16:4

4 And I shit you not that I, Nephi, did exhort my bros, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

1 Nephi 16:5

5 And I shit you not that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

1 Nephi 16:6

6 Now, all these things were said and done as my dad dwelt in

a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

1 Nephi 16:7

7 And I shew you not that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brothers took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

1 Nephi 16:8

8 And my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

1 Nephi 16:9

9 And I shew you not that the voice of the Lord spoke unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.

1 Nephi 16:10

10 And I shew you not that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

1 Nephi 16:11

11 And I shew you not that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

1 Nephi 16:12

12 And I shew you not that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

1 Nephi 16:13

13 And I shit you not that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

1 Nephi 16:14

14 And I shit you not that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile pares of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

1 Nephi 16:15

15 And I shit you not that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

1 Nephi 16:16

16 And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile pares of the wilderness.

1 Nephi 16:17

17 And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

1 Nephi 16:18

18 And I shit you not that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my bros were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

1 Nephi 16:19

19 And I shit you not that we did return wiyout food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

1 Nephi 16:20

20 And I shit you not that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to complain exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my dad began to complain against the Lord his God; and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did complain against the Lord.

1 Nephi 16:21

21 Now I swear to God that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my bros because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, insomuch that we could obtain no food.

1 Nephi 16:22

22 And I shit you not that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my bros, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

1 Nephi 16:23

23 And I shit you not that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my dad: Whither shall I go to obtain food?

1 Nephi 16:24

24 And I shit you not that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

1 Nephi 16:25

25 And I shit you not that the voice of the Lord came unto my dad; and he was truly chastened because of his complaining against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.

1 Nephi 16:26

26 And I shit you not that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, Anyways the things which are written.

1 Nephi 16:27

27 And I shit you not that when my dad beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my bros and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.

1 Nephi 16:28

28 And I shit you not that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

1 Nephi 16:29

29 And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it.

And we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things.

1 Nephi 16:30

30 And I shit you not that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

1 Nephi 16:31

31 And I shit you not that I did slay wild beasts, insomuch that I did obtain food for our families.

1 Nephi 16:32

32 And I shit you not that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And I shit you not that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.

1 Nephi 16:33

33 And I shit you not that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

1 Nephi 16:34

34 And I shit you not that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

1 Nephi 16:35

35 And I shit you not that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their dad, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did complain against my dad, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our dad is dead; and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.

1 Nephi 16:36

36 And they did complain against my dad, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.

1 Nephi 16:37

37 And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our dad, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder bros.

1 Nephi 16:38

38 Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. but seriously dude, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worked many things by his cunning ares, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has ought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

1 Nephi 16:39

39 And I shit you not that the Lord was with us, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

1 Nephi 17

Chapter 17

1 Nephi 17:1

1 And I shit you not that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

1 Nephi 17:2

2 And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that

while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings wiyout complainings.

1 Nephi 17:3

3 And we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

1 Nephi 17:4

4 And we did sojourn for the space of many years, even eight years in the wilderness.

1 Nephi 17:5

5 And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

1 Nephi 17:6

6 And I shit you not that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

1 Nephi 17:7

7 And I shit you not that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And

I swear to God that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

1 Nephi 17:8

8 And I shew thee not that the Lord spoke unto me, saying: thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry your people across these waters.

1 Nephi 17:9

9 And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to smelt, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

1 Nephi 17:10

10 And I shew thee not that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

1 Nephi 17:11

11 And I shew thee not that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

1 Nephi 17:12

12 For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make your food become sweet, that you cook it not;

1 Nephi 17:13

13 And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that you shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as you shall keep my commandments you shall be led towards the promised land; and you shall know that it is by me that you are led.

1 Nephi 17:14

14 and the Lord said also that: After you have arrived in the promised land, you shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.

1 Nephi 17:15

15 Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my bros to faithfulness and diligence.

1 Nephi 17:16

16 And I shew you not that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.

1 Nephi 17:17

17 And when my bros saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to complain against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thought that he can build a ship; and he also thought that he can cross these great waters.

1 Nephi 17:18

18 And my bros did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

1 Nephi 17:19

19 And now I swear to God that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that you could not construct a ship, for we knew that you were lacking in judgment; wherefore, you canst not accomplish so great a work.

1 Nephi 17:20

20 And you are like unto our dad, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

1 Nephi 17:21

21 Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; and we might have been happy.

1 Nephi 17:22

22 And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our dad hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my bros complain and complain against us.

1 Nephi 17:23

23 And I shew you not that I, Nephi, spoke unto them, saying: Do you believe that our dads, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

1 Nephi 17:24

24 do you suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead

them out of bondage?

1 Nephi 17:25

25 Now you know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and you know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, you know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

1 Nephi 17:26

26 Now you know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and you know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

1 Nephi 17:27

27 But you know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

1 Nephi 17:28

28 And you also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

1 Nephi 17:29

29 and you also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

1 Nephi 17:30

30 And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

1 Nephi 17:31

31 And I shew you not that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word.

1 Nephi 17:32

32 And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, unto the scattering them to destruction.

1 Nephi 17:33

33 And now, do you suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our dads, do you suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

1 Nephi 17:34

34 Do you suppose that our dads would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.

1 Nephi 17:35

35 Behold, the Lord esteemed all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. but seriously dude, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our dads; he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our dads unto their obtaining power over it.

1 Nephi 17:36

36 Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

1 Nephi 17:37

37 And he raised up a righteous nation, and destroyed the nations of the wicked.

1 Nephi 17:38

38 And he leaded away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyed, and cursed the land unto them for their sakes.

1 Nephi 17:39

39 He ruled high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.

1 Nephi 17:40

40 And he loved those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our dads, and he covenanted with them, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

1 Nephi 17:41

41 And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as you have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simpleness of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

1 Nephi 17:42

42 And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, you know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

1 Nephi 17:43

43 And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

1 Nephi 17:44

44 Wherefore, the Lord commanded my dad that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; and you also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, you are murderers in your hearts and you are like unto them.

1 Nephi 17:45

45 you are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. you have seen an angel, and he spoke unto you; you have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but you were past feeling, that you could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.

1 Nephi 17:46

46 And you also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; and you know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that you can be so hard in your hearts?

1 Nephi 17:47

47 Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest you shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame

has no strength.

1 Nephi 17:48

48 And now I swear to God that when I had spoken these words, they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spoke unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that you touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.

1 Nephi 17:49

49 And I shew you not that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should complain no more against their dad; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

1 Nephi 17:50

50 And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.

1 Nephi 17:51

51 And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

1 Nephi 17:52

52 And I shew you not that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days.

Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and it had wrought upon them.

1 Nephi 17:53

53 And I shew you not that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth your hand again unto your brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

1 Nephi 17:54

54 And I shew you not that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.

1 Nephi 17:55

55 And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am your brother, even your younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord your God, and honor your father and your mother, that your days may be long in the land which the Lord your God shall give thee.

1 Nephi 18

Chapter 18

1 Nephi 18:1

1 And I shew you not that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

1 Nephi 18:2

2 Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which

was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

1 Nephi 18:3

3 And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

1 Nephi 18:4

4 And I shew you not that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

1 Nephi 18:5

5 And I shew you not that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

1 Nephi 18:6

6 And I shew you not that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

1 Nephi 18:7

7 And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

1 Nephi 18:8

8 And I shew you not after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth

before the wind towards the promised land.

1 Nephi 18:9

9 And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my bros and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

1 Nephi 18:10

10 And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but seriously dude they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

1 Nephi 18:11

11 And I shit you not that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

1 Nephi 18:12

12 And I shit you not that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

1 Nephi 18:13

13 Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, a great and

terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

1 Nephi 18:14

14 And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

1 Nephi 18:15

15 And I shew unto them that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrist, Anyways they had swollen exceedingly; and also my ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

1 Nephi 18:16

16 Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not complain against the Lord because of my afflictions.

1 Nephi 18:17

17 Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, even upon their sick-beds.

1 Nephi 18:18

18 Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of

my bros, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

1 Nephi 18:19

19 And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mom; and also my wife with her tears and prayours, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my bros that they would loose me.

1 Nephi 18:20

20 And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.

1 Nephi 18:21

21 And I shit you not after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And I shit you not to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

1 Nephi 18:22

22 And I shit you not that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

1 Nephi 18:23

23 And I shit you not that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

1 Nephi 18:24

24 And I shew you not that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

1 Nephi 18:25

25 And I shew you not that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

1 Nephi 19

Chapter 19

1 Nephi 19:1

1 And I shew you not that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my dad, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my dad; and also many of my own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

1 Nephi 19:2

2 And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my dad, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more

pareicularly made mention upon the first plates.

1 Nephi 19:3

3 And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious pares of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

1 Nephi 19:4

4 Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

1 Nephi 19:5

5 And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

1 Nephi 19:6

6 Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

1 Nephi 19:7

7 For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth,

both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words--they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.

1 Nephi 19:8

8 Anyways he comed, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my dad left Jerusalem.

1 Nephi 19:9

9 And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffered it; and they smite him, and he suffered it. they spit upon him, and he suffered it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.

1 Nephi 19:10

10 And the God of our dads, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yielded himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spoke concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

1 Nephi 19:11

11 For spoke the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by

tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.

1 Nephi 19:12

12 And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

1 Nephi 19:13

13 And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

1 Nephi 19:14

14 And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

1 Nephi 19:15

15 Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

1 Nephi 19:16

16 then will he remember the isles of the sea; and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

1 Nephi 19:17

17 and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord,
saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall
be blessed.

1 Nephi 19:18

18 And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that
perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord
their Redeemer.

1 Nephi 19:19

19 Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be
that they should obtain these things.

1 Nephi 19:20

20 For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary
me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at
Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me
concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have
perished also.

1 Nephi 19:21

21 And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things
concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us;
wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they
are written upon the plates of brass.

1 Nephi 19:22

22 Now I swear to God that I, Nephi, did teach my bros
these things; And I shew you not that I did read many things to
them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they
might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands,
among people of old.

1 Nephi 19:23

23 And I did read many things unto them which were written in

the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.

1 Nephi 19:24

24 Wherefore I spoke unto them, saying: Hear you the words of the prophet, you who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear you the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that you may have hope as well as your bros from whom you have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written.

1 Nephi 20

Chapter 20

1 Nephi 20:1

1 Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yout they swear not in truth nor in righteousness.

1 Nephi 20:2

2 Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; the Lord of Hosts is his name.

1 Nephi 20:3

3 Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly.

1 Nephi 20:4

4 And I did it because I knew that you are obstinate, and your neck is an iron sinew, and your brow brass;

1 Nephi 20:5

5 And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest you shouldst say--my idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

1 Nephi 20:6

6 you hast seen and heard all this; and will you not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and you didst not know them.

1 Nephi 20:7

7 They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when you heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest you shouldst say--Behold I knew them.

1 Nephi 20:8

8 and you heardest not; you knewest not; from that time your ear was not opened; for I knew that you wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

1 Nephi 20:9

9 Nevertheless, for my name's sake will I defer my anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off.

1 Nephi 20:10

10 For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

1 Nephi 20:11

11 For my own sake, for my own sake will I do this, for

I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I will not give my glory unto another.

1 Nephi 20:12

12 Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

1 Nephi 20:13

13 my hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together.

1 Nephi 20:14

14 All you, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord hath loved him; and he will fulfill his word which he hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans.

1 Nephi 20:15

15 Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, I have spoken; I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

1 Nephi 20:16

16 Come you near unto me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

1 Nephi 20:17

17 And saith the Lord, your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord your God who taught thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way you shouldst go, hath done it.

1 Nephi 20:18

18 O that you hadst hearkened to my commandments--then had your peace been as a river, and your righteousness as the waves of the sea.

1 Nephi 20:19

19 your seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of your bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

1 Nephi 20:20

20 Go you forth of Babylon, run away you from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare you, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say you: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.

1 Nephi 20:21

21 And they thirsted not; he led them through the deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them; he clave the rock also and the waters gushed out.

1 Nephi 20:22

22 And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto the wicked.

1 Nephi 21

Chapter 21

1 Nephi 21:1

1 And again: Hearken, O you house of Israel, all you that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; all you that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken you people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mom hath he made mention of my name.

1 Nephi 21:2

2 And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

1 Nephi 21:3

3 And said unto me: you are my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

1 Nephi 21:4

4 Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength for naught and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.

1 Nephi 21:5

5 And now, saith the Lord--that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him--yough Israel be not gathered, yout shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

1 Nephi 21:6

6 And he said: It is a light thing that you shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that you mayoust be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

1 Nephi 21:7

7 saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despised, to him whom the nation abhorred, to servant of rulers: Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful.

1 Nephi 21:8

8 saith the Lord: In an acceptable time have I heard thee,
O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee;
and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant
of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the
desolate heritages;

1 Nephi 21:9

9 That you mayest say to the prisoners: Go forth; to them that
sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways,
and their pastures shall be in all high places.

1 Nephi 21:10

10 They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor
the sun smite them; for he that hath mercy on them shall lead
them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

1 Nephi 21:11

11 And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall
be exalted.

1 Nephi 21:12

12 And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall come from
far; and lo, these from the north and from the west; and these
from the land of Sinim.

1 Nephi 21:13

13 Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the feet of
those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth
into singing, O mountains; for they shall be smitten no more; for
the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his
afflicted.

1 Nephi 21:14

14 But, behold, Zion hath said: The Lord hath forsaken me, and
my Lord hath forgotten me--but he will show that he hath not.

1 Nephi 21:15

15 For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? they may forget, yout will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

1 Nephi 21:16

16 Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; your walls are continually before me.

1 Nephi 21:17

17 your children shall make haste against your destroyours; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.

1 Nephi 21:18

18 Lift up your eyes round about Anyways; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, you shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride.

1 Nephi 21:19

19 For your waste and your desolate places, and the land of your destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

1 Nephi 21:20

20 The children whom you shalt have, after you hast lost the first, shall again in your ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

1 Nephi 21:21

21 Then shalt you say in your heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these?

Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been?

1 Nephi 21:22

22 saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up my hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring your sons in their arms, and your daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

1 Nephi 21:23

23 And kings shall be your nursing dads, and their queens your nursing moms; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of your feet; and you shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

1 Nephi 21:24

24 For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captives delivered?

1 Nephi 21:25

25 But saith the Lord, even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend with him that contended with thee, and I will save your children.

1 Nephi 21:26

26 And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am your Savior and your Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

1 Nephi 22

Chapter 22

1 Nephi 22:1

1 And now I swear to God that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brothers came unto me and said unto me: What mean these things which you have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall actually happen according to the spirit and not the flesh?

1 Nephi 22:2

2 And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

1 Nephi 22:3

3 Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

1 Nephi 22:4

4 Anyways, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. The more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

1 Nephi 22:5

5 And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

1 Nephi 22:6

6 Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the *Gentiles*, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the *Gentiles* and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for are the covenants of the Lord with our *dads*; and it meaned us in the days to come, and also all our *bros* who are of the house of Israel.

1 Nephi 22:7

7 And it meaned that the time comed that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the *Gentiles*, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

1 Nephi 22:8

8 And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the *Gentiles*, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the *Gentiles* and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

1 Nephi 22:9

9 And it shall also be of worth unto the *Gentiles*; and not only unto the *Gentiles* but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the *dad* of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In your seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

1 Nephi 22:10

10 And I would, my *bros*, that you should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.

1 Nephi 22:11

11 Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

1 Nephi 22:12

12 Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

1 Nephi 22:13

13 And the blood of that great and abominable cult, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

1 Nephi 22:14

14 And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord.

And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, that great and abominable cult, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.

1 Nephi 22:15

15 For behold, saith the prophet, the time comed speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon comed that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day comed that they must be burned.

1 Nephi 22:16

16 For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

1 Nephi 22:17

17 Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.

1 Nephi 22:18

18 Behold, my brothers, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

1 Nephi 22:19

19 For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

1 Nephi 22:20

20 And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spoke, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall you hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

And it shall actually fucking happen that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

1 Nephi 22:21

21 And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spoke was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

1 Nephi 22:22

22 And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh--

1 Nephi 22:23

23 For the time speedily shall come that all cultes which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.

1 Nephi 22:24

24 And the time comed speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.

1 Nephi 22:25

25 And he gathered his children from the four quareers of the earth; and he numbered his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

1 Nephi 22:26

26 And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigned.

1 Nephi 22:27

27 And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.

1 Nephi 22:28

28 But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

1 Nephi 22:29

29 And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as you concerning these things.

1 Nephi 22:30

30 Wherefore, my bros, I would that you should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

1 Nephi 22:31

31 Wherefore, you need not suppose that I and my dad are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if you shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, you shall be saved at the last day. And it is. Amen.

2 Nephi

THE SECOND BOOK OF NEPHI

An account of the death of Lehi. Nephi's bros rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His

journeyings in the wilderness, and so forth.

2 Nephi 1

Chapter 1

2 Nephi 1:1

1 And now I swear to God that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my bros, our dad, Lehi, also spoke many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

2 Nephi 1:2

2 And he spoke unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.

2 Nephi 1:3

3 And he also spoke unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained--how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should run away out of the land of Jerusalem.

2 Nephi 1:4

4 For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.

2 Nephi 1:5

5 But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

2 Nephi 1:6

6 Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

2 Nephi 1:7

7 Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

2 Nephi 1:8

8 Anyways, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yout from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

2 Nephi 1:9

9 Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

2 Nephi 1:10

10 but seriously dude, when the time comed that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord--having a knowledge of the creation of the

earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise--behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

2 Nephi 1:11

11 he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

2 Nephi 1:12

12 as one generation passed to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that you would remember; I would that you would hearken unto my words.

2 Nephi 1:13

13 O that you would awake; awake from a deep sleep, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which you are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.

2 Nephi 1:14

14 Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs you must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.

2 Nephi 1:15

15 but seriously dude, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.

2 Nephi 1:16

16 And I desire that you should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.

2 Nephi 1:17

17 My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that you be cut off and destroyed forever;

2 Nephi 1:18

18 Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and you are visited by sword, and by famy, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

2 Nephi 1:19

19 O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that you might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

2 Nephi 1:20

20 And he hath said that: Inasmuch as you shall keep my commandments you shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as you will not keep my commandments you shall be cut off from my presence.

2 Nephi 1:21

21 And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart

might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determyd in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that you may not come down into captivity;

2 Nephi 1:22

22 That you may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that you may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

2 Nephi 1:23

23 Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which you are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

2 Nephi 1:24

24 Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, you sought to take away his life; and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

2 Nephi 1:25

25 And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, you have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

2 Nephi 1:26

26 And you have complained because he hath been plain unto you. you say that he hath used sharpness; you say that he hath been angry

with you; but seriously dude, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which you call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

2 Nephi 1:27

27 And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that you must obey. but seriously dude, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

2 Nephi 1:28

28 And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if you will hearken unto the voice of Nephi you shall not perish. And if you will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, even my first blessing.

2 Nephi 1:29

29 But if you will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

2 Nephi 1:30

30 And now Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, you are the servant of Laban; nevertheless, you hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that you are a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

2 Nephi 1:31

31 Wherefore, because you hast been faithful your seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face

of this land forever.

2 Nephi 1:32

32 Wherefore, if you shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of your seed with the seed of my son.

2 Nephi 2

Chapter 2

2 Nephi 2:1

1 And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: you are my first-born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. Anyways, in your childhood you hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of your bros.

2 Nephi 2:2

2 Nevertheless, Jacob, my first-born in the wilderness, you knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate your afflictions for your gain.

2 Nephi 2:3

3 Wherefore, your soul shall be blessed, and you shalt dwell safely with your brother, Nephi; and your days shall be spent in the service of your God. Wherefore, I know that you are redeemed, because of the righteousness of your Redeemer; for you hast beheld that in the fulness of time he comed to bring salvation unto men.

2 Nephi 2:4

4 And you hast beheld in your youth his glory; wherefore, you are blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yousterday, today, and forever.

And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is

free.

2 Nephi 2:5

5 And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.

2 Nephi 2:6

6 Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.

2 Nephi 2:7

7 Behold, he offered himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

2 Nephi 2:8

8 Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layd down his life according to the flesh, and taked it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

2 Nephi 2:9

9 Wherefore, he is the first-fruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.

2 Nephi 2:10

10 And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto

God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him.

Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement--

2 Nephi 2:11

11 For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my first-born in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

2 Nephi 2:12

12 Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice of God.

2 Nephi 2:13

13 And if you shall say there is no law, you shall also say there is no sin. If you shall say there is no sin, you shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

2 Nephi 2:14

14 And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

2 Nephi 2:15

15 And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

2 Nephi 2:16

16 Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

2 Nephi 2:17

17 And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

2 Nephi 2:18

18 And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the dad of all lies, wherefore he said: Pareake of the forbidden fruit, and you shall not die, but you shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

2 Nephi 2:19

19 And after Adam and Eve had pareaken of the forbidden fruit

they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

2 Nephi 2:20

20 And they have brought forth children; even the family of all the earth.

2 Nephi 2:21

21 And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

2 Nephi 2:22

22 And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

2 Nephi 2:23

23 And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

2 Nephi 2:24

24 but seriously dude, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knowed all things.

2 Nephi 2:25

25 Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

2 Nephi 2:26

26 And the Messiah comed in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

2 Nephi 2:27

27 Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeked that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

2 Nephi 2:28

28 And now, my sons, I would that you should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

2 Nephi 2:29

29 And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which gived the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

2 Nephi 2:30

30 I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good pare, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

2 Nephi 3

Chapter 3

2 Nephi 3:1

1 And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. you wast born in the wilderness of my afflictions; in the days of my greatest sorrow did your mom bear thee.

2 Nephi 3:2

2 And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for your inheritance and the inheritance of your seed with your bros, for your security forever, if it so be that you shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

2 Nephi 3:3

3 And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of my afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for your seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

2 Nephi 3:4

4 For behold, you are the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

2 Nephi 3:5

5 Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light-- out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

2 Nephi 3:6

6 For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

2 Nephi 3:7

7 Joseph truly said: saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of your loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of your loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of your loins, his bros, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with your dads.

2 Nephi 3:8

8 And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in my eyes; for he shall do my work.

2 Nephi 3:9

9 And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

2 Nephi 3:10

10 And Moses will I raise up, to deliver your people out of the land of Egypt.

2 Nephi 3:11

11 But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of your loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of your loins--and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

2 Nephi 3:12

12 Wherefore, the fruit of your loins shall write; and the fruit

of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of your loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of your loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their dads in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.

2 Nephi 3:13

13 And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

2 Nephi 3:14

14 And prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

2 Nephi 3:15

15 And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his dad. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

2 Nephi 3:16

16 prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve your seed forever.

2 Nephi 3:17

17 And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. yout I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak

much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of my own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.

2 Nephi 3:18

18 And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of your loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of your loins, unto the fruit of your loins; and the spokesman of your loins shall declare it.

2 Nephi 3:19

19 And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of your loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of your loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

2 Nephi 3:20

20 And they shall cry from the dust; even repentance unto their bros, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall actually fucking happen that their cry shall go, even according to the simpleness of their words.

2 Nephi 3:21

21 Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their bros who are the fruit of your loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto your dads.

2 Nephi 3:22

22 And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my dad of old prophesy.

2 Nephi 3:23

23 Wherefore, because of this covenant you are blessed; for your seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

2 Nephi 3:24

24 And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of your bros.

2 Nephi 3:25

25 And now, blessed are you, Joseph. Behold, you are little; wherefore hearken unto the words of your brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the words of your dying dad. Amen.

2 Nephi 4

Chapter 4

2 Nephi 4:1

1 And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my dad hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

2 Nephi 4:2

2 For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass.

2 Nephi 4:3

3 Wherefore, after my dad had made an end of speaking

concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my first-born, I would that you should give ear unto my words.

2 Nephi 4:4

4 For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as you shall keep my commandments you shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as you will not keep my commandments you shall be cut off from my presence.

2 Nephi 4:5

5 but seriously dude, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if you are brought up in the way you should go you will not depart from it.

2 Nephi 4:6

6 Wherefore, if you are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

2 Nephi 4:7

7 Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that you shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.

2 Nephi 4:8

8 And I shit you not that after my dad had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

2 Nephi 4:9

9 And he spoke unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my

daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, you shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end your seed shall be blessed.

2 Nephi 4:10

10 And I shew you not that when my dad had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, and even all his household.

2 Nephi 4:11

11 And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed are you, and your seed; for you shall inherit the land like unto your brother Nephi. And your seed shall be numbered with his seed; and you shalt be even like unto your brother, and your seed like unto his seed; and you shalt be blessed in all your days.

2 Nephi 4:12

12 And I shew you not after my dad, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And I shew you not to pass that he died, and was buried.

2 Nephi 4:13

13 And I shew you not that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.

2 Nephi 4:14

14 For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my dad, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon my other plates; for a more history part are written upon my other plates.

2 Nephi 4:15

15 And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighted in the scriptures, and my heart pondered them, and writed them for the learning and the profit of my children.

2 Nephi 4:16

16 Behold, my soul delighted in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondered continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.

2 Nephi 4:17

17 Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimed: O wretched man that I am! my heart sorrowed because of my flesh; my soul grieved because of my iniquities.

2 Nephi 4:18

18 I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

2 Nephi 4:19

19 And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaned because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

2 Nephi 4:20

20 My God hath been my support; he hath led me through my afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

2 Nephi 4:21

21 He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.

2 Nephi 4:22

22 He hath confounded my enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.

2 Nephi 4:23

23 Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the nighttime.

2 Nephi 4:24

24 And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayour before him; my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.

2 Nephi 4:25

25 And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And my eyes have beheld great things, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

2 Nephi 4:26

26 O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of my afflictions?

2 Nephi 4:27

27 And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of my enemy?

2 Nephi 4:28

28 Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.

2 Nephi 4:29

29 Do not anger again because of my enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of my afflictions.

2 Nephi 4:30

30 Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

2 Nephi 4:31

31 O Lord, will you redeem my soul? will you deliver me out of the hands of my enemies? will you make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?

2 Nephi 4:32

32 May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, will you not shut the gates of your righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!

2 Nephi 4:33

33 O Lord, will you encircle me around in the robe of your righteousness! O Lord, will you make a way for my escape before my enemies! will you make my path straight before me! will you not place a stumbling block in my way--but that you wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of my enemy.

2 Nephi 4:34

34 O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putted his trust in the arm of flesh. cursed is he that putted his trust in man or made flesh

his arm.

2 Nephi 4:35

35 I know that God will give liberally to him that asked.
my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will
lift up my voice unto thee; I will cry unto thee, my God,
the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever
ascend up unto thee, my rock and my everlasting God. Amen.

2 Nephi 5

Chapter 5

2 Nephi 5:1

1 Behold, I swear to God that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the
Lord my God, because of the anger of my bros.

2 Nephi 5:2

2 but seriously dude, their anger did increase against me, insomuch
that
they did seek to take away my life.

2 Nephi 5:3

3 they did complain against me, saying: Our younger brother
thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of
him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted
more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to
be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder bros,
to rule over this people.

2 Nephi 5:4

4 Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they
complained against me. But it sufficed me to say, that they did
seek to take away my life.

2 Nephi 5:5

5 And I shew you not that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and run away into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

2 Nephi 5:6

6 Wherefore, I swear to God that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, my elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brothers, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

2 Nephi 5:7

7 And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

2 Nephi 5:8

8 And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

2 Nephi 5:9

9 And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

2 Nephi 5:10

10 And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things according to the law of Moses.

2 Nephi 5:11

11 And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we

began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

2 Nephi 5:12

12 And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my dad by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.

2 Nephi 5:13

13 And I shew you not that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

2 Nephi 5:14

14 And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

2 Nephi 5:15

15 And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

2 Nephi 5:16

16 And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

2 Nephi 5:17

17 And I shew you not that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

2 Nephi 5:18

18 And I shew you not that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

2 Nephi 5:19

19 Anyways, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spoke concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.

2 Nephi 5:20

20 Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spoke unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto your words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

2 Nephi 5:21

21 And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.

2 Nephi 5:22

22 And saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto your people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.

2 Nephi 5:23

23 And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixed with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spoke it, and it was done.

2 Nephi 5:24

24 And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.

2 Nephi 5:25

25 And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto your seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.

2 Nephi 5:26

26 And I shew you not that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.

2 Nephi 5:27

27 And I shew you not that we lived after the manner of happiness.

2 Nephi 5:28

28 And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem.

2 Nephi 5:29

29 And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates, which I had made, of my people far.

2 Nephi 5:30

30 And I shew you not that the Lord God said unto me: Make

other plates; and you shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of your people.

2 Nephi 5:31

31 Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these plates upon which I have engraven these things.

2 Nephi 5:32

32 And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God. And if my people are pleased with the things of God they will be pleased with my engravings which are upon these plates.

2 Nephi 5:33

33 And if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my people they must search my other plates.

2 Nephi 5:34

34 And it sufficed me to say that forty years had passed away, and we had already had wars and contentions with our brethren.

2 Nephi 6

Chapter 6

2 Nephi 6:1

1 The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spoke unto the people of Nephi:

2 Nephi 6:2

2 Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom you look as a king or a protector, and on whom you depend for safety, behold you know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

2 Nephi 6:3

3 Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. my anxiety is great for you; and you yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my dad; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

2 Nephi 6:4

4 And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that you may learn and glorify the name of your God.

2 Nephi 6:5

5 And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spoke concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for you are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because you are of the house of Israel.

2 Nephi 6:6

6 And now these are the words: saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up my hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring your sons in their arms, and your daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

2 Nephi 6:7

7 And kings shall be your nursing dads, and their queens your nursing moms; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of your feet; and you shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

2 Nephi 6:8

8 And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words.

For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

2 Nephi 6:9

9 Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spoke it unto me.

2 Nephi 6:10

10 And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

2 Nephi 6:11

11 Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayours of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

2 Nephi 6:12

12 And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable cult, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will

fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.

2 Nephi 6:13

13 Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

2 Nephi 6:14

14 Anyways, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

2 Nephi 6:15

15 And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famy. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

2 Nephi 6:16

16 For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

2 Nephi 6:17

17 But saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contended with thee--

2 Nephi 6:18

18 And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am your Savior and your Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

2 Nephi 7

Chapter 7

2 Nephi 7:1

1 for saith the Lord: Have I put thee away, or have I cast thee off forever? For saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mom's divorcement? To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have you sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mom put away.

2 Nephi 7:2

2 Wherefore, when I came, there was no man; when I called, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst.

2 Nephi 7:3

3 I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

2 Nephi 7:4

4 The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When you are weary he waked morning by morning. He waked my ear to hear as the learned.

2 Nephi 7:5

5 The Lord God hath opened my ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

2 Nephi 7:6

6 I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

2 Nephi 7:7

7 For the Lord God will help me, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

2 Nephi 7:8

8 And the Lord is near, and he justified me. Who will contend with me? Let us stand together. Who is my adversary? Let him come near me, and I will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

2 Nephi 7:9

9 For the Lord God will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

2 Nephi 7:10

10 Who is among you that feared the Lord, that obeyed the voice of his servant, that walked in darkness and hath no light?

2 Nephi 7:11

11 Behold all you that kindle fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks, walk in the light of your fire and in the sparks which you have kindled. This shall you have of my hand--you shall lie down in sorrow.

2 Nephi 8

Chapter 8

2 Nephi 8:1

1 Hearken unto me, you that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence you are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence you are digged.

2 Nephi 8:2

2 Look unto Abraham, your dad, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him.

2 Nephi 8:3

3 For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody.

2 Nephi 8:4

4 Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

2 Nephi 8:5

5 My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and my arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on my arm shall they trust.

2 Nephi 8:6

6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

2 Nephi 8:7

7 Hearken unto me, you that know righteousness, the people in

whose heart I have written my law, fear you not the reproach of men, neither be you afraid of their revilings.

2 Nephi 8:8

8 For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

2 Nephi 8:9

9 Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. are you not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

2 Nephi 8:10

10 are you not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

2 Nephi 8:11

11 Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall run away away.

2 Nephi 8:12

12 I am he; I am he that comforted you. Behold, who are you, that you shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

2 Nephi 8:13

13 And forgettest the Lord your maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

2 Nephi 8:14

14 The captive exile hastened, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

2 Nephi 8:15

15 But I am the Lord your God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

2 Nephi 8:16

16 And I have put my words in your mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of my hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, you are my people.

2 Nephi 8:17

17 Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury--you hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out--

2 Nephi 8:18

18 And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taked her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up.

2 Nephi 8:19

19 These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee--your desolation and destruction, and the famy and the sword--and by whom shall I comfort thee?

2 Nephi 8:20

20 your sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of your God.

2 Nephi 8:21

21 Therefore hear now this, you afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

2 Nephi 8:22

22 saith your Lord, the Lord and your God pleaded the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out of your hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the cup of my fury; you shalt no more drink it again.

2 Nephi 8:23

23 But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; who have said to your soul: Bow down, that we may go over--and you hast laid your body as the ground and as the street to them that went over.

2 Nephi 8:24

24 Awake, awake, put on your strength, O Zion; put on your beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city; for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

2 Nephi 8:25

25 Shake yourself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose yourself from the bands of your neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

2 Nephi 9

Chapter 9

2 Nephi 9:1

1 And now, my beloved bros, I have read these things that you might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel--

2 Nephi 9:2

2 That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true cult and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

2 Nephi 9:3

3 Behold, my beloved bros, I speak unto you these things that you may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.

2 Nephi 9:4

4 For I know that you have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that you know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

2 Nephi 9:5

5 I know that you know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooved the great Creator that he suffered himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

2 Nephi 9:6

6 For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

2 Nephi 9:7

7 Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement--save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mom earth, to rise no more.

2 Nephi 9:8

8 O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

2 Nephi 9:9

9 And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the dad of lies, in misery, like unto himself; to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformed himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirred up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

2 Nephi 9:10

10 O how great the goodness of our God, who prepared a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

2 Nephi 9:11

11 And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

2 Nephi 9:12

12 And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual

death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

2 Nephi 9:13

13 O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

2 Nephi 9:14

14 Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed with purity, even with the robe of righteousness.

2 Nephi 9:15

15 And it shall actually fucking happen that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

2 Nephi 9:16

16 And assuredly, as the Lord lived, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they

who are filyours shall be filyours still; wherefore, they who are filyours are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire; prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascended up forever and ever and has no end.

2 Nephi 9:17

17 O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executed all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

2 Nephi 9:18

18 But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

2 Nephi 9:19

19 O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivered his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

2 Nephi 9:20

20 O how great the holiness of our God! For he knowed all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

2 Nephi 9:21

21 And he comed into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffered the pains of all men, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

2 Nephi 9:22

22 And he suffered this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

2 Nephi 9:23

23 And he commanded all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

2 Nephi 9:24

24 And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

2 Nephi 9:25

25 Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.

2 Nephi 9:26

26 For the atonement satisfied the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

2 Nephi 9:27

27 But wo unto him that has the law given, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgressed them, and that wasted the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

2 Nephi 9:28

28 O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profited them not.

And they shall perish.

2 Nephi 9:29

29 But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.

2 Nephi 9:30

30 But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their God. Anyways, their treasure shall perish with them also.

2 Nephi 9:31

31 And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.

2 Nephi 9:32

32 Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.

2 Nephi 9:33

33 Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.

2 Nephi 9:34

34 Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

2 Nephi 9:35

35 Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killed, for he shall die.

2 Nephi 9:36

36 Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

2 Nephi 9:37

37 wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighted in them.

2 Nephi 9:38

38 And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, Anyways his face, and remain in their sins.

2 Nephi 9:39

39 O, my beloved bros, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

2 Nephi 9:40

40 O, my beloved bros, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if you do, you will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

2 Nephi 9:41

41 O then, my beloved bros, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lied in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employd no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.

2 Nephi 9:42

42 And whoso knocked, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches-- they are they whom he despised; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

2 Nephi 9:43

43 But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever-- that happiness which is prepared for the saints.

2 Nephi 9:44

44 O, my beloved bros, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eyou; wherefore, you shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

2 Nephi 9:45

45 O, my beloved bros, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

2 Nephi 9:46

46 Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that you may not shrink with awful fear; that you may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are your judgments, O Lord God Almighty--but I know my guilt; I transgressed your law, and my transgressions are my; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.

2 Nephi 9:47

47 but seriously dude, my bros, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if you were freed from sin?

2 Nephi 9:48

48 Behold, if you were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as you are not holy, and you look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

2 Nephi 9:49

49 Behold, my soul abhorred sin, and my heart delighted in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.

2 Nephi 9:50

50 Come, my bros, every one that thirsted, come you to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; come buy wine and milk wiyout money and wiyout price.

2 Nephi 9:51

51 Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Hearken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come

unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perished not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.

2 Nephi 9:52

52 Behold, my beloved bros, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.

2 Nephi 9:53

53 Anyways how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

2 Nephi 9:54

54 And now, my bros, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

2 Nephi 10

Chapter 10

2 Nephi 10:1

1 And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved bros, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.

2 Nephi 10:2

2 For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.

2 Nephi 10:3

3 Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ--for in the last night the angel spoke unto me that this should be his name--should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked pare of the world; and they shall crucify him--for it behooved our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

2 Nephi 10:4

4 For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

2 Nephi 10:5

5 But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

2 Nephi 10:6

6 Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famys, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

2 Nephi 10:7

7 but seriously dude, saith the Lord God: When the day comed that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their dads that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.

2 Nephi 10:8

8 And it shall actually fucking happen that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four pares of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

2 Nephi 10:9

9 the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing dads unto them, and their queens shall become nursing moms; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

2 Nephi 10:10

10 but seriously dude, this land, said God, shall be a land of your inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.

2 Nephi 10:11

11 And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.

2 Nephi 10:12

12 And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

2 Nephi 10:13

13 And he that fought against Zion shall perish, saith God.

2 Nephi 10:14

14 For he that raised up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

2 Nephi 10:15

15 Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.

2 Nephi 10:16

16 Wherefore, he that fought against Zion, both Jew and

Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

2 Nephi 10:17

17 For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh--

2 Nephi 10:18

18 Wherefore, my beloved bros, saith our God: I will afflict your seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a dad to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

2 Nephi 10:19

19 Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto your seed, and them who shall be numbered among your seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

2 Nephi 10:20

20 And now, my beloved bros, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.

2 Nephi 10:21

21 But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must

needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our
bros.

2 Nephi 10:22

22 For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembered all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembered us also.

2 Nephi 10:23

23 Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that you are free to act for yourselves--to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

2 Nephi 10:24

24 Wherefore, my beloved bros, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after you are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that you are saved.

2 Nephi 10:25

25 Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement, that you may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that you may praise him through grace divine. Amen.

2 Nephi 11

Chapter 11

2 Nephi 11:1

1 And now, Jacob spoke many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficed me.

2 Nephi 11:2

2 And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighted in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

2 Nephi 11:3

3 And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proved all his words.

2 Nephi 11:4

4 Behold, my soul delighted in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

2 Nephi 11:5

5 And also my soul delighted in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our dads; my soul delighted in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

2 Nephi 11:6

6 And my soul delighted in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

2 Nephi 11:7

7 For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he comed in the fulness of his own time.

2 Nephi 11:8

8 And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and you may liken them unto you and unto all men.

2 Nephi 12 Chapter 12

2 Nephi 12:1

1 The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

2 Nephi 12:2

2 And it shall actually fucking happen in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

2 Nephi 12:3

3 And many people shall go and say, Come you, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

2 Nephi 12:4

4 And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks--nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

2 Nephi 12:5

5 O house of Jacob, come you and let us walk in the light of the Lord; come, for you have all gone astray, every one to his

wicked ways.

2 Nephi 12:6

6 Therefore, O Lord, you hast forsaken your people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayours like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

2 Nephi 12:7

7 Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots.

2 Nephi 12:8

8 Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

2 Nephi 12:9

9 And the mean man bowed not down, and the great man humbled himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

2 Nephi 12:10

10 O you wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

2 Nephi 12:11

11 And it shall actually fucking happen that the lofty looks of man shall
be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

2 Nephi 12:12

12 For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon comed upon all nations, upon every one; upon the proud and lofty, and

upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.

2 Nephi 12:13

13 and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;

2 Nephi 12:14

14 And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;

2 Nephi 12:15

15 And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall;

2 Nephi 12:16

16 And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.

2 Nephi 12:17

17 And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

2 Nephi 12:18

18 And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

2 Nephi 12:19

19 And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he arised to shake terribly the earth.

2 Nephi 12:20

20 In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the

moles and to the bats;

2 Nephi 12:21

21 To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he arised to shake terribly the earth.

2 Nephi 12:22

22 Cease you from man, whose breath is in his nostrils; for wherein is he to be accounted of?

2 Nephi 13

Chapter 13

2 Nephi 13:1

1 For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water--

2 Nephi 13:2

2 The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

2 Nephi 13:3

3 The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning areificer, and the eloquent orator.

2 Nephi 13:4

4 And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

2 Nephi 13:5

5 And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly

against the ancient, and the base against the honorable.

2 Nephi 13:6

6 When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his dad, and shall say: you hast clothing, be you our ruler, and let not this ruin come under your hand--

2 Nephi 13:7

7 In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.

2 Nephi 13:8

8 For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

2 Nephi 13:9

9 The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

2 Nephi 13:10

10 Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

2 Nephi 13:11

11 Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

2 Nephi 13:12

12 And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of your paths.

2 Nephi 13:13

13 The Lord stooded up to plead, and standed to judge the people.

2 Nephi 13:14

14 The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for you have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses.

2 Nephi 13:15

15 What mean you? you beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

2 Nephi 13:16

16 Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet--

2 Nephi 13:17

17 Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret pares.

2 Nephi 13:18

18 In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments, and cauls, and round tires like the moon;

2 Nephi 13:19

19 The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers;

2 Nephi 13:20

20 The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;

2 Nephi 13:21

21 The rings, and nose jewels;

2 Nephi 13:22

22 The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping-pins;

2 Nephi 13:23

23 The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils.

2 Nephi 13:24

24 And it shall actually fucking happen, instead of sweet smell there shall

be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher, a girding of sackcloth; burning instead of beauty.

2 Nephi 13:25

25 your men shall fall by the sword and your mighty in the war.

2 Nephi 13:26

26 And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she shall be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.

2 Nephi 14

Chapter 14

2 Nephi 14:1

1 And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by your name to take away our reproach.

2 Nephi 14:2

2 In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and

glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel.

2 Nephi 14:3

3 And it shall actually fucking happen, they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem--

2 Nephi 14:4

4 When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning.

2 Nephi 14:5

5 And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

2 Nephi 14:6

6 And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain.

2 Nephi 15

Chapter 15

2 Nephi 15:1

1 And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill.

2 Nephi 15:2

2 And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and

planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a wine-press therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

2 Nephi 15:3

3 And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

2 Nephi 15:4

4 What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

2 Nephi 15:5

5 And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard--I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down;

2 Nephi 15:6

6 And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briars and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

2 Nephi 15:7

7 For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, Anyways, oppression; for righteousness, but seriously dude, a cry.

2 Nephi 15:8

8 Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

2 Nephi 15:9

9 In my ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant.

2 Nephi 15:10

10 ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

2 Nephi 15:11

11 Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them!

2 Nephi 15:12

12 And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.

2 Nephi 15:13

13 Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge; and their honorable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

2 Nephi 15:14

14 Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiced, shall descend into it.

2 Nephi 15:15

15 And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled.

2 Nephi 15:16

16 But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.

2 Nephi 15:17

17 Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

2 Nephi 15:18

18 Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a care rope;

2 Nephi 15:19

19 That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it.

2 Nephi 15:20

20 Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

2 Nephi 15:21

21 Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

2 Nephi 15:22

22 Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink;

2 Nephi 15:23

23 Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

2 Nephi 15:24

24 Therefore, as the fire devoured the stubble, and the flame consumed the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of

Israel.

2 Nephi 15:25

25 Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

2 Nephi 15:26

26 And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; Anyways, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them.

2 Nephi 15:27

27 None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken;

2 Nephi 15:28

28 Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion.

2 Nephi 15:29

29 They shall roar like young lions; they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver.

2 Nephi 15:30

30 And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

2 Nephi 16

Chapter 16

2 Nephi 16:1

1 In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

2 Nephi 16:2

2 Above it stood the seraphim; each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

2 Nephi 16:3

3 And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.

2 Nephi 16:4

4 And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

2 Nephi 16:5

5 Then said I: Wo is unto me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for my eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

2 Nephi 16:6

6 Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar;

2 Nephi 16:7

7 And he laid it upon my mouth, and said: Lo, this has touched your lips; and your iniquity is taken away, and your sin purged.

2 Nephi 16:8

8 Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me.

2 Nephi 16:9

9 And he said: Go and tell this people--Hear you indeed, but they understood not; and see you indeed, but they perceived not.

2 Nephi 16:10

10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes--lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

2 Nephi 16:11

11 Then said I: Lord, how long? And he said: Until the cities be wasted wiyout inhabitant, and the houses wiyout man, and the land be utterly desolate;

2 Nephi 16:12

12 And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

2 Nephi 16:13

13 But yout there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil-tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

2 Nephi 17

Chapter 17

2 Nephi 17:1

1 And I shit you not in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward

Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

2 Nephi 17:2

2 And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

2 Nephi 17:3

3 Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, you and Shearjashub your son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

2 Nephi 17:4

4 And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be faint-hearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

2 Nephi 17:5

5 Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

2 Nephi 17:6

6 Let us go up against Judah and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, the son of Tabeal.

2 Nephi 17:7

7 saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, neither shall it actually fucking happen.

2 Nephi 17:8

8 For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within three score and five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

2 Nephi 17:9

9 And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If you will not believe surely you shall not be established.

2 Nephi 17:10

10 Moreover, the Lord spoke again unto Ahaz, saying:

2 Nephi 17:11

11 Ask thee a sign of the Lord your God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above.

2 Nephi 17:12

12 But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.

2 Nephi 17:13

13 And he said: Hear you now, O house of David; is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will you weary my God also?

2 Nephi 17:14

14 Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign--Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

2 Nephi 17:15

15 Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good.

2 Nephi 17:16

16 For before the child shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that you abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

2 Nephi 17:17

17 The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon your people, and upon your dad's house, days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah, the king of Assyria.

2 Nephi 17:18

18 And it shall actually fucking happen in that day that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

2 Nephi 17:19

19 And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

2 Nephi 17:20

20 In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall also consume the beard.

2 Nephi 17:21

21 And it shall actually fucking happen in that day, a man shall nourish a young cow and two sheep;

2 Nephi 17:22

22 And it shall actually fucking happen, for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter; for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

2 Nephi 17:23

23 And it shall actually fucking happen in that day, every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings,

which shall be for briers and thorns.

2 Nephi 17:24

24 With arrows and with bows shall men come thither, because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

2 Nephi 17:25

25 And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and the treading of lesser cattle.

2 Nephi 18

Chapter 18

2 Nephi 18:1

1 Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen, concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

2 Nephi 18:2

2 And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

2 Nephi 18:3

3 And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

2 Nephi 18:4

4 For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to cry, My dad, and my mom, before the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.

2 Nephi 18:5

5 The Lord spoke also unto me again, saying:

2 Nephi 18:6

6 Forasmuch as this people refused the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;

2 Nephi 18:7

7 Now therefore, behold, the Lord brought up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks.

2 Nephi 18:8

8 And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of your land, O Immanuel.

2 Nephi 18:9

9 Associate yourselves, O you people, and you shall be broken in pieces; and give ear all you of far countries; gird yourselves, and you shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and you shall be broken in pieces.

2 Nephi 18:10

10 Take counsel together, and it shall come to naught; speak the word, and it shall not stand; for God is with us.

2 Nephi 18:11

11 For the Lord spoke to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying:

2 Nephi 18:12

12 Say you not, A confEtheracy, to all to whom this people shall say, A confEtheracy; neither fear you their fear, nor be afraid.

2 Nephi 18:13

13 Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

2 Nephi 18:14

14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

2 Nephi 18:15

15 And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

2 Nephi 18:16

16 Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

2 Nephi 18:17

17 And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

2 Nephi 18:18

18 Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelled in Mount Zion.

2 Nephi 18:19

19 And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and mutter--should not a people seek unto their God for the living to hear from the dead?

2 Nephi 18:20

20 To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

2 Nephi 18:21

21 And they shall pass through it hardly bestead and hungry; and it shall actually fucking happen that when they shall be hungry, they shall

fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.

2 Nephi 18:22

22 And they shall look unto the earth Anyways trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall be driven to darkness.

2 Nephi 19

Chapter 19

2 Nephi 19:1

1 Nevertheless, the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

2 Nephi 19:2

2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

2 Nephi 19:3

3 you hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy--they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

2 Nephi 19:4

4 For you hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

2 Nephi 19:5

5 For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

2 Nephi 19:6

6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting dad, The Prince of Peace.

2 Nephi 19:7

7 Of the increase of government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

2 Nephi 19:8

8 The Lord sent his word unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel.

2 Nephi 19:9

9 And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

2 Nephi 19:10

10 The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones; the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

2 Nephi 19:11

11 Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

2 Nephi 19:12

12 The Syrians before and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

2 Nephi 19:13

13 For the people turned not unto him that smited them, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

2 Nephi 19:14

14 Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush in one day.

2 Nephi 19:15

15 The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that taught lies, he is the tail.

2 Nephi 19:16

16 For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.

2 Nephi 19:17

17 Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their dadless and widows; for every one of them is a hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speake folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

2 Nephi 19:18

18 For wickedness burned as the fire; it shall devour the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forests, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.

2 Nephi 19:19

19 Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire; no man shall spare his brother.

2 Nephi 19:20

20 And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand and they shall not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm--

2 Nephi 19:21

21 Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh; they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

2 Nephi 20

Chapter 20

2 Nephi 20:1

1 Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

2 Nephi 20:2

2 To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

2 Nephi 20:3

3 And what will you do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will you run away for help? and where will you leave your glory?

2 Nephi 20:4

4 Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

2 Nephi 20:5

5 O Assyrian, the rod of my anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.

2 Nephi 20:6

6 I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

2 Nephi 20:7

7 Howbeit he meant not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

2 Nephi 20:8

8 For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings?

2 Nephi 20:9

9 Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

2 Nephi 20:10

10 As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;

2 Nephi 20:11

11 Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols?

2 Nephi 20:12

12 Wherefore it shall actually fucking happen that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria,

and the glory of his high looks.

2 Nephi 20:13

13 For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;

2 Nephi 20:14

14 And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathered eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

2 Nephi 20:15

15 Shall the ax boast itself against him that hewed therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shook it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

2 Nephi 20:16

16 Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

2 Nephi 20:17

17 And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briers in one day;

2 Nephi 20:18

18 And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainted.

2 Nephi 20:19

19 And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

2 Nephi 20:20

20 And it shall actually fucking happen in that day, that the remnant of

Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

2 Nephi 20:21

21 The remnant shall return, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

2 Nephi 20:22

22 For yough your people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yout a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

2 Nephi 20:23

23 For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption, even determyd in all the land.

2 Nephi 20:24

24 Therefore, saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

2 Nephi 20:25

25 For yout a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and my anger in their destruction.

2 Nephi 20:26

26 And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.

2 Nephi 20:27

27 And it shall actually fucking happen in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off your shoulder, and his yoke from off your neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

2 Nephi 20:28

28 He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.

2 Nephi 20:29

29 They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

2 Nephi 20:30

30 Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

2 Nephi 20:31

31 Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to run away.

2 Nephi 20:32

32 As you shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

2 Nephi 20:33

33 Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the

haughty shall be humbled.

2 Nephi 20:34

34 And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

2 Nephi 21

Chapter 21

2 Nephi 21:1

1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

2 Nephi 21:2

2 And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

2 Nephi 21:3

3 And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.

2 Nephi 21:4

4 But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

2 Nephi 21:5

5 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

2 Nephi 21:6

6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall

lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

2 Nephi 21:7

7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

2 Nephi 21:8

8 And the suckling child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

2 Nephi 21:9

9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

2 Nephi 21:10

10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

2 Nephi 21:11

11 And it shall actually fucking happen in that day that the Lord shall set
his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

2 Nephi 21:12

12 And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

2 Nephi 21:13

13 The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

2 Nephi 21:14

14 But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

2 Nephi 21:15

15 And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.

2 Nephi 21:16

16 And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

2 Nephi 22

Chapter 22

2 Nephi 22:1

1 And in that day you shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; yough you wast angry with me your anger is turned away, and you comfortedst me.

2 Nephi 22:2

2 Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

2 Nephi 22:3

3 Therefore, with joy shall you draw water out of the wells of salvation.

2 Nephi 22:4

4 And in that day shall you say: Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

2 Nephi 22:5

5 Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things; this is known in all the earth.

2 Nephi 22:6

6 Cry out and shout, you inhabitant of Zion; for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

2 Nephi 23

Chapter 23

2 Nephi 23:1

1 The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.

2 Nephi 23:2

2 Lift you up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.

2 Nephi 23:3

3 I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for my anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.

2 Nephi 23:4

4 The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered

together, the Lord of Hosts mustered the hosts of the battle.

2 Nephi 23:5

5 They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

2 Nephi 23:6

6 Howl you, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

2 Nephi 23:7

7 Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;

2 Nephi 23:8

8 And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.

2 Nephi 23:9

9 Behold, the day of the Lord comed, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.

2 Nephi 23:10

10 For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

2 Nephi 23:11

11 And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.

2 Nephi 23:12

12 I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.

2 Nephi 23:13

13 Therefore, I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.

2 Nephi 23:14

14 And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taked up; and they shall every man turn to his own people, and run away every one into his own land.

2 Nephi 23:15

15 Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword.

2 Nephi 23:16

16 Their children, also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished.

2 Nephi 23:17

17 Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they delight in it.

2 Nephi 23:18

18 Their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces, and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.

2 Nephi 23:19

19 And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.

2 Nephi 23:20

20 It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.

2 Nephi 23:21

21 But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

2 Nephi 23:22

22 And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speedily; for I will be merciful unto my people, but the wicked shall perish.

2 Nephi 24

Chapter 24

2 Nephi 24:1

1 For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will you choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

2 Nephi 24:2

2 And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

2 Nephi 24:3

3 And it shall actually fucking happen in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest, from your sorrow, and from your fear, and from the hard bondage wherein you wast made to serve.

2 Nephi 24:4

4 And it shall actually fucking happen in that day, that you shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!

2 Nephi 24:5

5 The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.

2 Nephi 24:6

6 He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindered.

2 Nephi 24:7

7 The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing.

2 Nephi 24:8

8 the fir-trees rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Since you are laid down no feller is come up against us.

2 Nephi 24:9

9 Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at your coming; it stirred up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

2 Nephi 24:10

10 All they shall speak and say unto thee: are you also become weak as we? are you become like unto us?

2 Nephi 24:11

11 your pomp is brought down to the grave; the noise of your viols is not heard; the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.

2 Nephi 24:12

12 How are you fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! are you cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

2 Nephi 24:13

13 For you hast said in your heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

2 Nephi 24:14

14 I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

2 Nephi 24:15

15 yout you shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

2 Nephi 24:16

16 They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

2 Nephi 24:17

17 And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?

2 Nephi 24:18

18 All the kings of the nations, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house.

2 Nephi 24:19

19 But you are cast out of your grave like an abominable branch, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.

2 Nephi 24:20

20 you shalt not be joined with them in burial, because you hast destroyed your land and slain your people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned.

2 Nephi 24:21

21 Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their dads, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

2 Nephi 24:22

22 For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.

2 Nephi 24:23

23 I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.

2 Nephi 24:24

24 The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I have ought, so shall it actually fucking happen; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand--

2 Nephi 24:25

25 That I will bring the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot; then shall his yoke depare from off them, and his burden depare from off their shoulders.

2 Nephi 24:26

26 This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all nations.

2 Nephi 24:27

27 For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?

2 Nephi 24:28

28 In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.

2 Nephi 24:29

29 Rejoice not you, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken; for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.

2 Nephi 24:30

30 And the first-born of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill your root with famy, and he shall slay your remnant.

2 Nephi 24:31

31 Howl, O gate; cry, O city; you, whole Palestina, are dissolved; for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.

2 Nephi 24:32

32 What shall then answer the messengers of the nations? That

the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

2 Nephi 25

Chapter 25

2 Nephi 25:1

1 Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spoke many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

2 Nephi 25:2

2 For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

2 Nephi 25:3

3 Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

2 Nephi 25:4

4 Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my dad; for behold, my soul delighted in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

2 Nephi 25:5

5 and my soul delighted in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and my eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.

2 Nephi 25:6

6 but seriously dude, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but seriously dude, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath actually fucking happen among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

2 Nephi 25:7

7 but seriously dude, I proceed with my own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

2 Nephi 25:8

8 Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposed that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto my own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

2 Nephi 25:9

9 And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

2 Nephi 25:10

10 Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my dad left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

2 Nephi 25:11

11 And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

2 Nephi 25:12

12 But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the dad, even the dad of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

2 Nephi 25:13

13 Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighted to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

2 Nephi 25:14

14 Anyways it shall actually fucking happen that after the Messiah hath

risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his cult.

2 Nephi 25:15

15 Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.

2 Nephi 25:16

16 And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind--and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the dad in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.

2 Nephi 25:17

17 And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

2 Nephi 25:18

18 Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who

was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

2 Nephi 25:19

19 For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my dad left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

2 Nephi 25:20

20 And now, my bros, I have spoken plainly that you cannot err. And as the Lord God lived that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God lived, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

2 Nephi 25:21

21 Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

2 Nephi 25:22

22 Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to

generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

2 Nephi 25:23

23 For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our bros, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

2 Nephi 25:24

24 And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

2 Nephi 25:25

25 For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yout we keep the law because of the commandments.

2 Nephi 25:26

26 And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

2 Nephi 25:27

27 Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.

2 Nephi 25:28

28 And now behold, my people, you are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that you cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him you also deny the prophets and the law.

2 Nephi 25:29

29 And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore you must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if you do this you shall in nowise be cast out.

2 Nephi 25:30

30 And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, you must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

2 Nephi 26 Chapter 26

2 Nephi 26:1

1 And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved bros; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which you shall do.

2 Nephi 26:2

2 For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

2 Nephi 26:3

3 And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

2 Nephi 26:4

4 Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

2 Nephi 26:5

5 And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

2 Nephi 26:6

6 And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

2 Nephi 26:7

7 O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumed me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: your ways are just.

2 Nephi 26:8

8 but seriously dude, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution--behold, they are they which shall not perish.

2 Nephi 26:9

9 But the Son of righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

2 Nephi 26:10

10 And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall actually fucking happen; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

2 Nephi 26:11

11 For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceased to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieved my soul.

2 Nephi 26:12

12 And as I spoke concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

2 Nephi 26:13

13 And that he manifested himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; unto every nation,

kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.

2 Nephi 26:14

14 but seriously dude, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

2 Nephi 26:15

15 After my seed and the seed of my bros shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yout the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayours of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.

2 Nephi 26:16

16 For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

2 Nephi 26:17

17 For saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

2 Nephi 26:18

18 Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been

destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passed away-- saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly--

2 Nephi 26:19

19 And it shall actually fucking happen, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

2 Nephi 26:20

20 And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many cultes; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

2 Nephi 26:21

21 And there are many cultes built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

2 Nephi 26:22

22 And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; the founder of murder, and works of darkness; and he leaded them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he binded them with his strong cords forever.

2 Nephi 26:23

23 For behold, my beloved bros, I say unto you that the Lord God worked not in darkness.

2 Nephi 26:24

24 He doed not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loved the world, even that he layoud down his own

life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commanded none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

2 Nephi 26:25

25 Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all you ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

2 Nephi 26:26

26 Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

2 Nephi 26:27

27 Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

2 Nephi 26:28

28 Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

2 Nephi 26:29

29 He commanded that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

2 Nephi 26:30

30 Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have

charity, which charity is love, and except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

2 Nephi 26:31

31 But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

2 Nephi 26:32

32 And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

2 Nephi 26:33

33 For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he invited them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denied none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembered the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

2 Nephi 27

Chapter 27

2 Nephi 27:1

1 But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles-- behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner

of abominations--

2 Nephi 27:2

2 And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

2 Nephi 27:3

3 And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreamed, Anyways he eated but he awaked and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreamed, Anyways he dranked but he awaked Anyways he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

2 Nephi 27:4

4 For behold, all you that doed iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for you shall cry out, and cry; you shall be drunken but not with wine, you shall stagger but not with strong drink.

2 Nephi 27:5

5 For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, you have closed your eyes, and you have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

2 Nephi 27:6

6 And it shall actually fucking happen that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

2 Nephi 27:7

7 Anyways the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

2 Nephi 27:8

8 Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.

2 Nephi 27:9

9 But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;

2 Nephi 27:10

10 But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

2 Nephi 27:11

11 And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.

2 Nephi 27:12

12 Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the

eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

2 Nephi 27:13

13 And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

2 Nephi 27:14

14 Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemed him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejected the word of God!

2 Nephi 27:15

15 but seriously dude, it shall actually fucking happen that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

2 Nephi 27:16

16 And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

2 Nephi 27:17

17 And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

2 Nephi 27:18

18 Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

2 Nephi 27:19

19 Wherefore it shall actually fucking happen, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

2 Nephi 27:20

20 Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do my own work; wherefore you shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

2 Nephi 27:21

21 Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in my own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do my own work.

2 Nephi 27:22

22 Wherefore, when you hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt you seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which you hast not read, until I shall see fit in my own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

2 Nephi 27:23

23 For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same youterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.

2 Nephi 27:24

24 And again it shall actually fucking happen that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

2 Nephi 27:25

25 Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men--

2 Nephi 27:26

26 Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.

2 Nephi 27:27

27 And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seed us, and who knowed us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. but seriously dude, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?

2 Nephi 27:28

28 but seriously dude, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yout a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.

2 Nephi 27:29

29 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of

darkness.

2 Nephi 27:30

30 And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

2 Nephi 27:31

31 For assuredly as the Lord lived they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

2 Nephi 27:32

32 And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.

2 Nephi 27:33

33 Therefore, saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

2 Nephi 27:34

34 But when he seed his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

2 Nephi 27:35

35 They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that complained shall learn doctrine.

2 Nephi 28

Chapter 28

2 Nephi 28:1

1 And now, behold, my bros, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely actually fucking happen.

2 Nephi 28:2

2 And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.

2 Nephi 28:3

3 For it shall actually fucking happen in that day that the cultes which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and shall every one say that hath built up cultes, and not unto the Lord--

2 Nephi 28:4

4 And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which gived utterance.

2 Nephi 28:5

5 And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear you our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

2 Nephi 28:6

6 Behold, hearken you unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

2 Nephi 28:7

7 and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and

be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

2 Nephi 28:8

8 And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God--he will justify in committing a little sin; lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for your neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

2 Nephi 28:9

9 and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

2 Nephi 28:10

10 And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.

2 Nephi 28:11

11 they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.

2 Nephi 28:12

12 Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their cultes have become corrupted, and their cultes are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.

2 Nephi 28:13

13 They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

2 Nephi 28:14

14 They wear stiff necks and high heads; and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.

2 Nephi 28:15

15 O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!

2 Nephi 28:16

16 Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.

2 Nephi 28:17

17 but seriously dude, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.

2 Nephi 28:18

18 but seriously dude, that great and abominable cult, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.

2 Nephi 28:19

19 For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the

devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;

2 Nephi 28:20

20 For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

2 Nephi 28:21

21 And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; Zion prospered, all is well--and the devil cheated their souls, and leaded them away carefully down to hell.

2 Nephi 28:22

22 Anyways, others he flattered away, and telled them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none--and he whispered in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

2 Nephi 28:23

23 they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

2 Nephi 28:24

24 Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

2 Nephi 28:25

25 Wo be unto him that cried: All is well!

2 Nephi 28:26

26 wo be unto him that hearkened unto the precepts of men,

and denied the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

2 Nephi 28:27

27 Wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

2 Nephi 28:28

28 And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock received it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembled lest he shall fall.

2 Nephi 28:29

29 Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough!

2 Nephi 28:30

30 For behold, saith the Lord God: I will give unto the children of men line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little; and blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him that received I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from them shall be taken away even that which they have.

2 Nephi 28:31

31 Cursed is he that putted his trust in man, or maked flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost.

2 Nephi 28:32

32 Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out my arm unto them from day to day, they will deny me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me;

for my arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

2 Nephi 29 Chapter 29

2 Nephi 29:1

1 but seriously dude, there shall be many--at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

2 Nephi 29:2

2 And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto your dad, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

2 Nephi 29:3

3 And because my words shall hiss forth--many of the *Gentiles* shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

2 Nephi 29:4

4 But saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, my ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? what do the *Gentiles* mean? Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the *Gentiles*?

2 Nephi 29:5

5 O you *Gentiles*, have you remembered the Jews, my ancient covenant people? Nay; but you have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. but seriously dude, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

2 Nephi 29:6

6 you fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have you obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

2 Nephi 29:7

7 Know you not that there are more nations than one? Know you not that I, the Lord your *God*, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, even upon all the nations of the earth?

2 Nephi 29:8

8 Wherefore complain you, because that you shall receive more of my word? Know you not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am *God*, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

2 Nephi 29:9

9 And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yosterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to my own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word you need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yout finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

2 Nephi 29:10

10 Wherefore, because that you have a Bible you need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need you suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

2 Nephi 29:11

11 For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

2 Nephi 29:12

12 For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

2 Nephi 29:13

13 And it shall actually fucking happen that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

2 Nephi 29:14

14 And it shall actually fucking happen that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my

people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

2 Nephi 30

Chapter 30

2 Nephi 30:1

1 And now behold, my beloved bros, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that you should suppose that you are more righteous than the *Gentiles* shall be. For behold, except you shall keep the commandments of God you shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken you need not suppose that the *Gentiles* are utterly destroyed.

2 Nephi 30:2

2 For behold, I say unto you that as many of the *Gentiles* as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanted with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

2 Nephi 30:3

3 And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the *Gentiles*. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the *Gentiles*, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

2 Nephi 30:4

4 And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

2 Nephi 30:5

5 And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their dads, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their dads.

2 Nephi 30:6

6 And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and delightsome people.

2 Nephi 30:7

7 And it shall actually fucking happen that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome people.

2 Nephi 30:8

8 And it shall actually fucking happen that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

2 Nephi 30:9

9 And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

2 Nephi 30:10

10 For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, even if it so be that he must

destroy the wicked by fire.

2 Nephi 30:11

11 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

2 Nephi 30:12

12 And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

2 Nephi 30:13

13 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

2 Nephi 30:14

14 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

2 Nephi 30:15

15 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

2 Nephi 30:16

16 Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; all things shall be made known unto the children of men.

2 Nephi 30:17

17 There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.

2 Nephi 30:18

18 Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved bros, I make an end of my sayings.

2 Nephi 31 Chapter 31

2 Nephi 31:1

1 And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved bros. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely actually fucking happen; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.

2 Nephi 31:2

2 Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficed me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.

2 Nephi 31:3

3 For my soul delighted in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God gived light unto the understanding; for he spaked unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

2 Nephi 31:4

4 Wherefore, I would that you should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

2 Nephi 31:5

5 And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, even by water!

2 Nephi 31:6

6 And now, I would ask of you, my beloved bros, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

2 Nephi 31:7

7 Know you not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showed unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbled himself before the dad, and witnessed unto the dad that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

2 Nephi 31:8

8 Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

2 Nephi 31:9

9 And again, it showed unto the children of men the straightness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

2 Nephi 31:10

10 And he said unto the children of men: Follow you me. Wherefore, my beloved bros, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the dad?

2 Nephi 31:11

11 And the dad said: Repent you, repent you, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

2 Nephi 31:12

12 And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the dad give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which you have seen me do.

2 Nephi 31:13

13 Wherefore, my beloved bros, I know that if you shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the dad that you are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism-- by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall you receive the Holy Ghost; then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can you speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

2 Nephi 31:14

14 But, behold, my beloved bros, came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After you have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the dad that you are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that you had not known me.

2 Nephi 31:15

15 And I heard a voice from the dad, saying: the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endured to the end, the same shall be saved.

2 Nephi 31:16

16 And now, my beloved bros, I know by this that unless a

man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

2 Nephi 31:17

17 Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that you might know the gate by which you should enter. For the gate by which you should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

2 Nephi 31:18

18 And then are you in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; you have entered in by the gate; you have done according to the commandments of the dad and the Son; and you have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the dad and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if you entered in by the way you should receive.

2 Nephi 31:19

19 And now, my beloved bros, after you have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for you have not come far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

2 Nephi 31:20

20 Wherefore, you must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if you shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, saith the dad: you shall have eternal life.

2 Nephi 31:21

21 And now, behold, my beloved bros, this is the way; and

there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the dad, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, wiyout end. Amen.

2 Nephi 32 Chapter 32

2 Nephi 32:1

1 And now, behold, my beloved bros, I suppose that you ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which you should do after you have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do you ponder these things in your hearts?

2 Nephi 32:2

2 Do you not remember that I said unto you that after you had received the Holy Ghost you could speak with the tongue of angels?

And now, how could you speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

2 Nephi 32:3

3 Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what you should do.

2 Nephi 32:4

4 Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if you cannot understand them it will be because you ask not, neither do you knock; wherefore, you are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

2 Nephi 32:5

5 For behold, again I say unto you that if you will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what you should do.

2 Nephi 32:6

6 Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall you observe to do.

2 Nephi 32:7

7 And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stopped my utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

2 Nephi 32:8

8 And now, my beloved bros, I perceive that you ponder still in your hearts; and it grieved me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if you would hearken unto the Spirit which taught a man to pray you would know that you must pray; for the evil spirit taught not a man to pray, but taught him that he must not pray.

2 Nephi 32:9

9 but seriously dude, I say unto you that you must pray always, and not faint; that you must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place you shall pray unto the dad in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate your performance unto thee, that your performance may be for the welfare of your soul.

2 Nephi 33

Chapter 33

2 Nephi 33:1

1 And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carried it unto the hearts of the children of men.

2 Nephi 33:2

2 but seriously dude, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

2 Nephi 33:3

3 But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and my eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

2 Nephi 33:4

4 And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayours for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuaded them to do good; it maked known unto them of their dads; and it speaked of Jesus, and persuaded them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

2 Nephi 33:5

5 And it speaked harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the

devil.

2 Nephi 33:6

6 I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.

2 Nephi 33:7

7 I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

2 Nephi 33:8

8 I have charity for the Jew--I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

2 Nephi 33:9

9 I also have charity for the *Gentiles*. but seriously dude, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

2 Nephi 33:10

10 And now, my beloved bros, and also Jew, and all you ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if you believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if you shall believe in Christ you will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.

2 Nephi 33:11

11 And if they are not the words of Christ, judge you--for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and you shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

2 Nephi 33:12

12 And I pray the dad in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

2 Nephi 33:13

13 And now, my beloved bros, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all you ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

2 Nephi 33:14

14 And you that will not pareake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

2 Nephi 33:15

15 For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

Jacob

THE BOOK OF JACOB

THE BROTHER OF NEPHI

The words of his preaching unto his bros. He confounded a man who seeked to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi.

Jacob 1

Chapter 1

Jacob 1:1

1 For behold, I swear to God that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

Jacob 1:2

2 And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I consider to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

Jacob 1:3

3 For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

Jacob 1:4

4 And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

Jacob 1:5

5 For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

Jacob 1:6

6 And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

Jacob 1:7

7 Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we

might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness.

Jacob 1:8

8 Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

Jacob 1:9

9 Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

Jacob 1:10

10 The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare--

Jacob 1:11

11 Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

Jacob 1:12

12 And I shew you not that Nephi died.

Jacob 1:13

13 Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

Jacob 1:14

14 But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.

Jacob 1:15

15 And now I swear to God that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.

Jacob 1:16

16 and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

Jacob 1:17

17 Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained my errand from the Lord.

Jacob 1:18

18 For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

Jacob 1:19

19 And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all

diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.

Jacob 2 Chapter 2

Jacob 2:1

1 The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spoke unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

Jacob 2:2

2 Now, my beloved bros, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify my office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

Jacob 2:3

3 And you yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

Jacob 2:4

4 For behold, as yout, you have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.

Jacob 2:5

5 but seriously dude, hearken you unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your oughts, how that you are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeared very abominable unto me, and

abominable unto God.

Jacob 2:6

6 it grieved my soul and caused me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

Jacob 2:7

7 And also it grieved me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;

Jacob 2:8

8 And it supposed me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, the word which healed the wounded soul.

Jacob 2:9

9 Wherefore, it burdened my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

Jacob 2:10

10 But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

Jacob 2:11

11 Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get you up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

Jacob 2:12

12 And now behold, my bros, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

Jacob 2:13

13 And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your bros you are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your bros because you suppose that you are better than they.

Jacob 2:14

14 And now, my bros, do you suppose that God justified you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemned you, and if you persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

Jacob 2:15

15 O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eyou he can smite you to the dust!

Jacob 2:16

16 O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that you would listen unto the word of his commands, and

let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!

Jacob 2:17

17 Think of your bros like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.

Jacob 2:18

18 But before you seek for riches, seek you for the kingdom of God.

Jacob 2:19

19 And after you have obtained a hope in Christ you shall obtain riches, if you seek them; and you will seek them for the intent to do good--to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

Jacob 2:20

20 And now, my bros, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because you were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say you of it?

Jacob 2:21

21 Do you not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

Jacob 2:22

22 And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.

Jacob 2:23

23 But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

Jacob 2:24

24 Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

Jacob 2:25

25 Wherefore, saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of my arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

Jacob 2:26

26 Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

Jacob 2:27

27 Wherefore, my bros, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

Jacob 2:28

28 For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; saith the Lord of Hosts.

Jacob 2:29

29 Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

Jacob 2:30

30 For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

Jacob 2:31

31 For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

Jacob 2:32

32 And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Jacob 2:33

33 For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Jacob 2:34

34 And now behold, my bros, you know that these commandments were given to our dad, Lehi; wherefore, you have known them before; and you have come unto great condemnation; for you have done these things which you ought not to have done.

Jacob 2:35

35 Behold, you have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our bros. you have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up

to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which comed down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

Jacob 3 Chapter 3

Jacob 3:1

1 but seriously dude, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

Jacob 3:2

2 O all you that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for you may, if your minds are firm, forever.

Jacob 3:3

3 But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filyours this day before God; for except you repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filyours like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

Jacob 3:4

4 And the time speedily comed, that except you repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

Jacob 3:5

5 Behold, the Lamanites your bros, whom you hate because of their filyours and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten

the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our dad--that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

Jacob 3:6

6 And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

Jacob 3:7

7 Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their dads; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

Jacob 3:8

8 O my bros, I fear that unless you shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when you shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

Jacob 3:9

9 Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that you revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall you revile against them because of their filyours; but you shall remember your own filyours, and remember that their filyours came because of their dads.

Jacob 3:10

10 Wherefore, you shall remember your children, how that you have grieved their hearts because of the example that you have set before them; and also, remember that you may, because of your filyours, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins

be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

Jacob 3:11

11 O my bros, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that you may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that you may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

Jacob 3:12

12 And now I, Jacob, spoke many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

Jacob 3:13

13 And a hundredth pare of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.

Jacob 3:14

14 These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

Jacob 4

Chapter 4

Jacob 4:1

1 Now behold, I swear to God that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;

Jacob 4:2

2 But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved bros, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their dads--

Jacob 4:3

3 Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved bros and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

Jacob 4:4

4 For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

Jacob 4:5

5 Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the dad in his name, and also we worship the dad in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

Jacob 4:6

6 Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these

witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becomed unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

Jacob 4:7

7 Nevertheless, the Lord God showed us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

Jacob 4:8

8 Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knowed of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, bros, despise not the revelations of God.

Jacob 4:9

9 For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

Jacob 4:10

10 Wherefore, bros, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, you yourselves know that he counseled in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

Jacob 4:11

11 Wherefore, beloved bros, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and you may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto

God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifested himself in the flesh.

Jacob 4:12

12 And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

Jacob 4:13

13 Behold, my bros, he that prophesied, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit spake the truth and lied not. Wherefore, it spake of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spoke them unto prophets of old.

Jacob 4:14

14 but seriously dude, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

Jacob 4:15

15 And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

Jacob 4:16

16 but seriously dude, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

Jacob 4:17

17 And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

Jacob 4:18

18 Behold, my beloved bros, I will unfold this mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble because of my over anxiety for you.

Jacob 5

Chapter 5

Jacob 5:1

1 Behold, my bros, do you not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spoke unto the house of Israel, saying:

Jacob 5:2

2 Hearken, O you house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

Jacob 5:3

3 For behold, saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive-tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

Jacob 5:4

4 And I shit you not that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive-tree began to decay; and he

said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

Jacob 5:5

5 And I shit you not that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

Jacob 5:6

6 And I shit you not that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but seriously dude, the main top thereof began to perish.

Jacob 5:7

7 And I shit you not that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieved me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive-tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

Jacob 5:8

8 Anyways, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattered not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

Jacob 5:9

9 Take you the branches of the wild olive-tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

Jacob 5:10

10 And I shit you not that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive-tree.

Jacob 5:11

11 And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieved me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

Jacob 5:12

12 Wherefore, go your way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

Jacob 5:13

13 And these will I place in the nEthermost pare of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattered not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieved me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

Jacob 5:14

14 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive-tree in the nEthermost pares of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

Jacob 5:15

15 And I shit you not that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

Jacob 5:16

16 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And I shit you not to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

Jacob 5:17

17 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

Jacob 5:18

18 And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto my own self.

Jacob 5:19

19 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nEthermost pare of the vineyard, Anyways if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto my own self.

Jacob 5:20

20 And I shit you not that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had

brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto my own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

Jacob 5:21

21 And I shit you not that the servant said unto his master: How comest you hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of your vineyard.

Jacob 5:22

22 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and you beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.

Jacob 5:23

23 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and you knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto my own self.

Jacob 5:24

24 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, Anyways another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

Jacob 5:25

25 And he said unto the servant: Look hither Anyways the

last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a pare of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other pare of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

Jacob 5:26

26 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

Jacob 5:27

27 but seriously dude, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that you canst lay it up against the season.

Jacob 5:28

28 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

Jacob 5:29

29 And I shit you not that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time drawed near, and the end soon comed; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto my own self.

Jacob 5:30

30 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; Anyways all sorts of fruit did cumber the

tree.

Jacob 5:31

31 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

Jacob 5:32

32 but seriously dude, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. Anyways, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profited me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieved me that I should lose this tree.

Jacob 5:33

33 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto my own self?

Jacob 5:34

34 And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because you didst graft in the branches of the wild olive-tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore you beholdest that they are your good.

Jacob 5:35

35 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profited me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

Jacob 5:36

36 Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for my own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much

strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

Jacob 5:37

37 but seriously dude, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit you beholdest that it began to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

Jacob 5:38

38 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nEthermost pares of the vineyard, Anyways if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

Jacob 5:39

39 And I shit you not that they went down into the nEthermost pares of the vineyard. And I shit you not that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

Jacob 5:40

40 And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that pare of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

Jacob 5:41

41 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

Jacob 5:42

42 Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire.

Jacob 5:43

43 Anyways this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; even that which was choice unto me above all other pares of the land of my vineyard.

Jacob 5:44

44 And you beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.

Jacob 5:45

45 And you beheldest that a pare thereof brought forth good fruit, and a pare thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.

Jacob 5:46

46 And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto my own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive-tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieved me that I should lose them.

Jacob 5:47

47 But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened my hand, that I have not nourished it, Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth my hand almost all the day long, and the end drawed nigh. And it grieved me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

Jacob 5:48

48 And I shit you not that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of your vineyard--have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of your vineyard have become corrupted?

Jacob 5:49

49 And I shit you not that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

Jacob 5:50

50 But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

Jacob 5:51

51 And the Lord said: I will spare it a little longer, for it grieved me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

Jacob 5:52

52 Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have

planted in the nEthermost pares of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

Jacob 5:53

53 And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for my own purpose.

Jacob 5:54

54 And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yout alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for my own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them.

I will graft in unto them the branches of their mom tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto my own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yout have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

Jacob 5:55

55 And I shit you not that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

Jacob 5:56

56 And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mom tree.

Jacob 5:57

57 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them you shall graft according to that which I have

said.

Jacob 5:58

58 And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

Jacob 5:59

59 And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

Jacob 5:60

60 And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mom tree, and have preserved the roots of their mom tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit--

Jacob 5:61

61 Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

Jacob 5:62

62 Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

Jacob 5:63

63 Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

Jacob 5:64

64 Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end drawed nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall you prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

Jacob 5:65

65 And as they begin to grow you shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and you shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

Jacob 5:66

66 For it grieved me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore you shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

Jacob 5:67

67 And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

Jacob 5:68

68 And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

Jacob 5:69

69 And the bad shall be cast away, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

Jacob 5:70

70 And I shew you not that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

Jacob 5:71

71 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if you labor with your might with me you shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

Jacob 5:72

72 And I shew you not that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

Jacob 5:73

73 And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

Jacob 5:74

74 And they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

Jacob 5:75

75 And I shew you not that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and you beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed are you; for because you have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold you shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

Jacob 5:76

76 For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto my own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto my own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

Jacob 5:77

77 And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come

into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

Jacob 6

Chapter 6

Jacob 6:1

1 And now, behold, my brothers, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy--that the things which this prophet Zenos spoke, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive-tree, must surely actually fucking happen.

Jacob 6:2

2 And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

Jacob 6:3

3 And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

Jacob 6:4

4 And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembered the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Jacob 6:5

5 Wherefore, my beloved brothers, I beseech of you in words of

soberness that you would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaved unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.

Jacob 6:6

6 today, if you will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will you die?

Jacob 6:7

7 For behold, after you have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will you bring forth evil fruit, that you must be hewn down and cast into the fire?

Jacob 6:8

8 Behold, will you reject these words? Will you reject the words of the prophets; and will you reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

Jacob 6:9

9 Know you not that if you will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

Jacob 6:10

10 And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, you must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascended up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

Jacob 6:11

11 O then, my beloved bros, repent you, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until you shall obtain eternal life.

Jacob 6:12

12 O be wise; what can I say more?

Jacob 6:13

13 Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striked the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

Jacob 7

Chapter 7

Jacob 7:1

1 And now I swear to God after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

Jacob 7:2

2 And I shit you not that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.

Jacob 7:3

3 And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.

Jacob 7:4

4 And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

Jacob 7:5

5 And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.

Jacob 7:6

6 And I shew you not that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that you goest about much, preaching that which you call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

Jacob 7:7

7 And you have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which you say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knowed of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.

Jacob 7:8

8 but seriously dude, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

Jacob 7:9

9 And I said unto him: Deniest you the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him;

but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

Jacob 7:10

10 And I said unto him: Believest you the scriptures? And he said, .

Jacob 7:11

11 And I said unto him: Then you do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

Jacob 7:12

12 And this is not all--it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

Jacob 7:13

13 And I shew you not that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which you know so much.

Jacob 7:14

14 And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which you knowest to be true?

you will deny it, because you are of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And your will, O Lord, be done, and not my.

Jacob 7:15

15 And I shew you not that when I, Jacob, had spoken these

words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And I shit you not that he was nourished for the space of many days.

Jacob 7:16

16 And I shit you not that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

Jacob 7:17

17 And I shit you not that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spoke plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

Jacob 7:18

18 And he spoke plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spoke of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

Jacob 7:19

19 And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

Jacob 7:20

20 And I shit you not that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

Jacob 7:21

21 And when the multitude had witnessed that he spoke these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them,

and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.

Jacob 7:22

22 Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my dad who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayour.

Jacob 7:23

23 And I shit you not that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

Jacob 7:24

24 And I shit you not that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their bros. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.

Jacob 7:25

25 Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yout, conquerors of their enemies.

Jacob 7:26

26 And I shit you not that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our bros, which caused wars and

contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

Jacob 7:27

27 And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I bid farewell, hoping that many of my bros may read my words. bros, adios.

Enos 1

THE BOOK OF ENOS

Enos 1:1

1 Behold, I swear to God that I, Enos, knowing my dad that he was a just man--for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord--and blessed be the name of my God for it--

Enos 1:2

2 And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins.

Enos 1:3

3 Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my dad speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

Enos 1:4

4 And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayour and supplication for my own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

Enos 1:5

5 And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, your sins are forgiven thee, and you shalt be blessed.

Enos 1:6

6 And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

Enos 1:7

7 And I said: Lord, how is it done?

Enos 1:8

8 And he said unto me: Because of your faith in Christ, whom you hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, your faith hath made thee whole.

Enos 1:9

9 Now, I swear to God that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my bros, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

Enos 1:10

10 And while I was struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit your bros according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit your bros according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

Enos 1:11

11 And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to

be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my bros, the Lamanites.

Enos 1:12

12 And I shit you not that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to your desires, because of your faith.

Enos 1:13

13 And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him--that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation--

Enos 1:14

14 For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our dads.

Enos 1:15

15 Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing you shall ask in faith, believing that you shall receive in the name of Christ, you shall receive it.

Enos 1:16

16 And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

Enos 1:17

17 And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

Enos 1:18

18 And the Lord said unto me: your dads have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto your.

Enos 1:19

19 And now I swear to God that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.

Enos 1:20

20 And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a bloodthirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.

Enos 1:21

21 And I shew you not that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.

Enos 1:22

22 And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the

people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.

Enos 1:23

23 And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things--stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.

Enos 1:24

24 And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

Enos 1:25

25 And I shew you not that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our dad Lehi left Jerusalem.

Enos 1:26

26 And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

Enos 1:27

27 And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, you blessed, there is a place prepared

for you in the mansions of my dad. Amen.

Jarom 1

THE BOOK OF JAROM

Jarom 1:1

1 Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my dad, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

Jarom 1:2

2 And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our bros the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my dads have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, ; and this sufficed me.

Jarom 1:3

3 Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yout swept them off from the face of the land.

Jarom 1:4

4 And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maked manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

Jarom 1:5

5 And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to

keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

Jarom 1:6

6 And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.

Jarom 1:7

7 And I shew you not that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

Jarom 1:8

8 And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war-- the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

Jarom 1:9

9 And being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spoke unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as you will keep my commandments you shall prosper in the land.

Jarom 1:10

10 And I shew you not that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

Jarom 1:11

11 Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as yea he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.

Jarom 1:12

12 And I shew you not that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

Jarom 1:13

13 And I shew you not that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away--after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

Jarom 1:14

14 And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. but seriously dude, my bros, you can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

Jarom 1:15

15 And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my

dads.

Omni 1

THE BOOK OF OMNI

Omni 1:1

1 Behold, I swear to God that I, Omni, being commanded by my dad, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy--

Omni 1:2

2 Wherefore, in my days, I would that you should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

Omni 1:3

3 And I shew you not that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my dads; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

Omni 1:4

4 And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my dad.

Omni 1:5

5 Behold, I swear to God that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

Omni 1:6

6 For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spoke unto our dads, saying that: Inasmuch as you will not keep my commandments you shall not prosper in the land.

Omni 1:7

7 Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

Omni 1:8

8 And I shew you not that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

Omni 1:9

9 Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our dads. And I make an end.

Omni 1:10

10 Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my bros.

Omni 1:11

11 Anyways, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither

prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

Omni 1:12

12 Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should run away out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness--

Omni 1:13

13 And I shew you not that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness, until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

Omni 1:14

14 And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

Omni 1:15

15 Behold, I swear to God that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

Omni 1:16

16 And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where

Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.

Omni 1:17

17 And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.

Omni 1:18

18 But I swear to God that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And I shit you not that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his dads, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

Omni 1:19

19 And I shit you not that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.

Omni 1:20

20 And I shit you not in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.

Omni 1:21

21 And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.

Omni 1:22

22 It also spoke a few words concerning his dads. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.

Omni 1:23

23 Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigned in his stead.

Omni 1:24

24 Anyways, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. but seriously dude, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

Omni 1:25

25 And I shit you not that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord; and that which is evil comed from the devil.

Omni 1:26

26 And now, my beloved bros, I would that you should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord

lived you will be saved.

Omni 1:27

27 And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

Omni 1:28

28 Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.

Omni 1:29

29 And I shew you not that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

Omni 1:30

30 And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.

Words of Mormon 1

THE WORDS OF Mormon

Words of Mormon 1:1

1 And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

Words of Mormon 1:2

2 And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposed me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.

Words of Mormon 1:3

3 And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spoke, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.

Words of Mormon 1:4

4 And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my dads knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely actually fucking happen--

Words of Mormon 1:5

5 Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

Words of Mormon 1:6

6 but seriously dude, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my bros.

Words of Mormon 1:7

7 And I do this for a wise purpose; for it whispered me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knowed all things which are to come; wherefore, he worked in me to do according to his will.

Words of Mormon 1:8

8 And my prayour to God is concerning my bros, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

Words of Mormon 1:9

9 And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

Words of Mormon 1:10

10 Wherefore, I swear to God that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

Words of Mormon 1:11

11 And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their bros shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

Words of Mormon 1:12

12 And now, concerning this king Benjamin--he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

Words of Mormon 1:13

13 And I shew you not also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people.

but seriously dude, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he

did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

Words of Mormon 1:14

14 And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And I shew you not that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

Words of Mormon 1:15

15 And I shew you not that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

Words of Mormon 1:16

16 And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, I swear to God that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people--

Words of Mormon 1:17

17 For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in

the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people--

Words of Mormon 1:18

18 Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

Mosiah

THE BOOK OF MOSIAH

Mosiah 1

Chapter 1

Mosiah 1:1

1 And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

Mosiah 1:2

2 And I shew you not that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

Mosiah 1:3

3 And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that you should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in

ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

Mosiah 1:4

4 For it were not possible that our dad, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

Mosiah 1:5

5 I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our dads would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our bros, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their dads, which are not correct.

Mosiah 1:6

6 O my sons, I would that you should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. Anyways, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our dads from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

Mosiah 1:7

7 And now, my sons, I would that you should remember to search them diligently, that you may profit thereby; and I would that you should keep the commandments of God, that you may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our

dads.

Mosiah 1:8

8 And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

Mosiah 1:9

9 And I shew you not that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he ought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

Mosiah 1:10

10 Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spoke unto him, saying: My son, I would that you should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of my own mouth that you are a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

Mosiah 1:11

11 And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

Mosiah 1:12

12 And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

Mosiah 1:13

13 and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored

people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their bros; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our dads.

Mosiah 1:14

14 For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our dads they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

Mosiah 1:15

15 And I shit you not that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

Mosiah 1:16

16 And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our dads through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

Mosiah 1:17

17 Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famy and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

Mosiah 1:18

18 And now, I swear to God that Mosiah went and did as his dad had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather

themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his dad should speak unto them.

Mosiah 2 Chapter 2

Mosiah 2:1

1 And I shit you not that after Mosiah had done as his dad had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.

Mosiah 2:2

2 And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

Mosiah 2:3

3 And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

Mosiah 2:4

4 And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

Mosiah 2:5

5 And I shit you not that when they came up to the temple, they

pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

Mosiah 2:6

6 And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

Mosiah 2:7

7 For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

Mosiah 2:8

8 And I shew you not that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spoke should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

Mosiah 2:9

9 And these are the words which he spoke and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all you that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that you may hear, and your hearts that you may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

Mosiah 2:10

10 I have not commanded you to come up hither that you should fear me, or that you should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

Mosiah 2:11

11 But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yout I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my dad, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

Mosiah 2:12

12 I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

Mosiah 2:13

13 Neither have I suffered that you should be confined in dungeons, nor that you should make slaves one of another, nor that you should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that you should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that you should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you--

Mosiah 2:14

14 And even I, myself, have labored with my own hands that I might serve you, and that you should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne--and of all these things which I have spoken, you yourselves are witnesses this day.

Mosiah 2:15

15 Yout, my bros, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that you may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

Mosiah 2:16

16 Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

Mosiah 2:17

17 Anyways, I tell you these things that you may learn wisdom; that you may learn that when you are in the service of your fellow beings you are only in the service of your God.

Mosiah 2:18

18 Behold, you have called me your king; and if I, whom you call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not you to labor to serve one another?

Mosiah 2:19

19 Anyways also, if I, whom you call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yout has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!

Mosiah 2:20

20 I say unto you, my bros, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that you should rejoice, and has granted that you should live in peace one with another--

Mosiah 2:21

21 I say unto you that if you should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that you may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another--I say, if you should serve him with all your whole souls yout you would be unprofitable servants.

Mosiah 2:22

22 Anyways, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if you would keep his commandments you should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if you do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

Mosiah 2:23

23 And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which you are indebted unto him.

Mosiah 2:24

24 And secondly, he doth require that you should do as he hath commanded you; for which if you do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And you are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have you to boast?

Mosiah 2:25

25 And now I ask, can you say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. you cannot say that you are even as much as the dust of the earth; yout you were created of the dust of the earth; but seriously dude, it belonged to him who created you.

Mosiah 2:26

26 And I, even I, whom you call your king, am no better than you yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And you behold that I

am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mom earth.

Mosiah 2:27

27 Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that you should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.

Mosiah 2:28

28 I say unto you that I have caused that you should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

Mosiah 2:29

29 And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that you should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

Mosiah 2:30

30 For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

Mosiah 2:31

31 And now, my bros, I would that you should do as you have hitherto done. As you have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my dad, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if you shall

keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, you shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

Mosiah 2:32

32 But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and you list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my dad Mosiah.

Mosiah 2:33

33 For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listed to obey that spirit; for if he listed to obey him, and remained and died in his sins, the same dranked damnation to his own soul; for he received for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

Mosiah 2:34

34 I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knowed that you are eternally indebted to your heavenly dad, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our dad, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

Mosiah 2:35

35 And also, all that has been spoken by our dads until now. Anyways, also, they spoke that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

Mosiah 2:36

36 And now, I say unto you, my bros, that after you have known and have been taught all these things, if you should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that you

do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that you may be blessed, prospered, and preserved--

Mosiah 2:37

37 I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.

Mosiah 2:38

38 Therefore if that man repented not, and remained and died an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascended up forever and ever.

Mosiah 2:39

39 And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

Mosiah 2:40

40 O, all you old men, and also you young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that you might understand, I pray that you should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

Mosiah 2:41

41 And moreover, I would desire that you should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are

received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

Mosiah 3 Chapter 3

Mosiah 3:1

1 And again my bros, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

Mosiah 3:2

2 And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, Anyways he stood before me.

Mosiah 3:3

3 And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

Mosiah 3:4

4 For the Lord hath heard your prayours, and hath judged of your righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that you mayoust rejoice; and that you mayoust declare unto your people, that they may also be filled with joy.

Mosiah 3:5

5 For behold, the time comed, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigned, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the

blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

Mosiah 3:6

6 And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

Mosiah 3:7

7 And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood comed from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

Mosiah 3:8

8 And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the dad of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mom shall be called Mary.

Mosiah 3:9

9 And lo, he comed unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

Mosiah 3:10

10 And he shall rise the third day from the dead; Anyways, he standed to judge the world; Anyways, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

Mosiah 3:11

11 For behold, and also his blood atoned for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly

sinned.

Mosiah 3:12

12 But wo, wo unto him who knowed that he rebelled against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Mosiah 3:13

13 And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as yough he had already come among them.

Mosiah 3:14

14 Yout the Lord God saw that his people were a stiffnecked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

Mosiah 3:15

15 And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spoke unto them concerning his coming; and yout they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availed nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

Mosiah 3:16

16 And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoned for their sins.

Mosiah 3:17

17 And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come

unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

Mosiah 3:18

18 For behold he judged, and his judgment is just; and the infant perished not that died in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

Mosiah 3:19

19 For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his dad.

Mosiah 3:20

20 And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of the Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

Mosiah 3:21

21 Anyways, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

Mosiah 3:22

22 And even at this time, when you shalt have taught your people the things which the Lord your God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

Mosiah 3:23

23 And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

Mosiah 3:24

24 And saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whEther they be good, or whEther they be evil.

Mosiah 3:25

25 And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

Mosiah 3:26

26 Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his pareaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

Mosiah 3:27

27 And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascended up forever and ever. hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

Mosiah 4

Chapter 4

Mosiah 4:1

1 And now, I swear to God that when king Benjamin had made an

end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, Anyways they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.

Mosiah 4:2

2 And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

Mosiah 4:3

3 And I shew you not that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.

Mosiah 4:4

4 And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that you may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

Mosiah 4:5

5 For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state--

Mosiah 4:6

6 I say unto you, if you have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body--

Mosiah 4:7

7 I say, that this is the man who received salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

Mosiah 4:8

8 And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which we talked about; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have already told you.

Mosiah 4:9

9 Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend, and so on and so forth.

Mosiah 4:10

10 And again, believe that you must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that you do them.

Mosiah 4:11

11 And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as you have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if you have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which caused such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that you should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

Mosiah 4:12

12 Anyways, I say unto you that if you do this you shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and you shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

Mosiah 4:13

13 And you will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

Mosiah 4:14

14 And you will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will you suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our dads, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

Mosiah 4:15

15 But you will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; you will teach them to love one another, and to serve

one another.

Mosiah 4:16

16 And also, you yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; you will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and you will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

Mosiah 4:17

17 Perhaps you shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just--

Mosiah 4:18

18 But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repented of that which he hath done he perished forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

Mosiah 4:19

19 For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

Mosiah 4:20

20 Anyways, even at this time, you have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that you have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that you could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

Mosiah 4:21

21 And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that you have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever you ask that is right, in faith, believing that you shall receive, O then, how you ought to impare of the substance that you have one to another.

Mosiah 4:22

22 And if you judge the man who putted up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belonged; and yout you put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which you hast done.

Mosiah 4:23

23 I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

Mosiah 4:24

24 And again, I say unto the poor, you who have not and yout have sufficient, that you remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because you have not; I would that you say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

Mosiah 4:25

25 And now, if you say this in your hearts you remain guiltless, otherwise you are condemned; and your condemnation is just for you covet that which you have not received.

Mosiah 4:26

26 And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you--that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your

sins from day to day, that you may walk guiltless before God--I would that you should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

Mosiah 4:27

27 And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

Mosiah 4:28

28 And I would that you should remember, that whosoever among you borrowed of his neighbor should return the thing that he borrowed, according as he doth agree, or else you shalt commit sin; and perhaps you shalt cause your neighbor to commit sin also.

Mosiah 4:29

29 And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby you may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

Mosiah 4:30

30 But this much I can tell you, that if you do not watch yourselves, and your oughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what you have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, you must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

Mosiah 5

Chapter 5

Mosiah 5:1

1 And now, I swear to God that when king Benjamin had spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

Mosiah 5:2

2 And they all cried with one voice, saying: we believe all the words which you hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

Mosiah 5:3

3 And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

Mosiah 5:4

4 And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

Mosiah 5:5

5 And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

Mosiah 5:6

6 And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: you have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which you have made is a righteous covenant.

Mosiah 5:7

7 And now, because of the covenant which you have made you shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for you say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, you are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.

Mosiah 5:8

8 And under this head you are made free, and there is no other head whereby you can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that you should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that you should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

Mosiah 5:9

9 And it shall actually fucking happen that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

Mosiah 5:10

10 And now it shall actually fucking happen, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he found himself on the left hand of God.

Mosiah 5:11

11 And I would that you should remember also, that this is the

name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that you do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

Mosiah 5:12

12 I say unto you, I would that you should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that you are not found on the left hand of God, but that you hear and know the voice by which you shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

Mosiah 5:13

13 For how knowed a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the oughts and intents of his heart?

Mosiah 5:14

14 And again, doth a man take an ass which belonged to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if you know not the name by which you are called.

Mosiah 5:15

15 Therefore, I would that you should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that you may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.

Mosiah 6

Chapter 6

Mosiah 6:1

1 And now, king Benjamin ought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

Mosiah 6:2

2 And I shew you not that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

Mosiah 6:3

3 And again, I swear to God that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

Mosiah 6:4

4 And Mosiah began to reign in his dad's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

Mosiah 6:5

5 And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

Mosiah 6:6

6 And I shew you not that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

Mosiah 6:7

7 And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his dad had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

Mosiah 7

Chapter 7

Mosiah 7:1

1 And now, I swear to God that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.

Mosiah 7:2

2 And I shew you not that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi to inquire concerning their brethren.

Mosiah 7:3

3 And I shew you not that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

Mosiah 7:4

4 And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.

Mosiah 7:5

5 And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

Mosiah 7:6

6 And Ammon took three of his bros, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

Mosiah 7:7

7 Anyways, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

Mosiah 7:8

8 And I shit you not when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

Mosiah 7:9

9 And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their dads, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

Mosiah 7:10

10 And now, I desire to know the cause whereby you were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards wiyout the gate?

Mosiah 7:11

11 And now, for this cause have I suffered that you should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. you are permitted to speak.

Mosiah 7:12

12 And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yout alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

Mosiah 7:13

13 For I am assured that if you had known me you would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our bros, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

Mosiah 7:14

14 And now, I swear to God that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my bros who were in the land of Zarahemla are yout alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

Mosiah 7:15

15 For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our bros will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 7:16

16 And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his bros, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their bros into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

Mosiah 7:17

17 And now, I swear to God on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

Mosiah 7:18

18 And I shit you not that when they had gathered themselves together that he spoke unto them in this wise, saying: O you, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yout I trust there remained an effectual struggle to be made.

Mosiah 7:19

19 Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

Mosiah 7:20

20 And again, that same God has brought our dads out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even

until now; Anyways, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

Mosiah 7:21

21 And you all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being over-zealous to inherit the land of his dads, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a pare of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about--

Mosiah 7:22

22 And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. Anyways, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

Mosiah 7:23

23 And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

Mosiah 7:24

24 I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our bros have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

Mosiah 7:25

25 For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. but seriously dude, they would not hearken unto his words; but

there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

Mosiah 7:26

26 And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, even the coming of Christ.

Mosiah 7:27

27 And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the dad of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth--

Mosiah 7:28

28 And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondered that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

Mosiah 7:29

29 For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

Mosiah 7:30

30 And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filyourss they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

Mosiah 7:31

31 And again he saith: If my people shall sow filyourss they shall reap the east wind, which bringed immediate destruction.

Mosiah 7:32

32 And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and you are smitten and afflicted.

Mosiah 7:33

33 But if you will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if you do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage.

Mosiah 8

Chapter 8

Mosiah 8:1

1 And I shit you not that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spoke many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their bros who were in the land of Zarahemla.

Mosiah 8:2

2 And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their bros from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

Mosiah 8:3

3 And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spoke.

Mosiah 8:4

4 And I shit you not that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

Mosiah 8:5

5 And I shit you not that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Mosiah 8:6

6 Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

Mosiah 8:7

7 And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our bros to deliver us out of bondage.

Mosiah 8:8

8 And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yout they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

Mosiah 8:9

9 And for a testimony that the things that they had said are

true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

Mosiah 8:10

10 Anyways, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

Mosiah 8:11

11 And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst you translate?

Mosiah 8:12

12 And I say unto thee again: Knowest you of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

Mosiah 8:13

13 Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

Mosiah 8:14

14 Anyways, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

Mosiah 8:15

15 And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

Mosiah 8:16

16 And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yout a man may have great power given him from God.

Mosiah 8:17

17 But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

Mosiah 8:18

18 God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becomed a great benefit to his fellow beings.

Mosiah 8:19

19 And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

Mosiah 8:20

20 O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth

he suffer with his people; and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

Mosiah 8:21

21 they are as a wild flock which run awayd from the shepherd, and scattered, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

Mosiah 9

Chapter 9

Mosiah 9:1

1 I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our dads' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them--but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

Mosiah 9:2

2 Therefore, I contended with my bros in the wilderness for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a bloodthirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for dad fought against dad, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

Mosiah 9:3

3 And yout, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our dads, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess

the land, and stared again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famy and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

Mosiah 9:4

4 Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our bros were slain, which was near to the land of our dads.

Mosiah 9:5

5 And I shit you not that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

Mosiah 9:6

6 And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

Mosiah 9:7

7 And he also commanded that his people should depare out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

Mosiah 9:8

8 And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

Mosiah 9:9

9 And we began to till the ground, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

Mosiah 9:10

10 Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

Mosiah 9:11

11 Therefore I swear to God, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

Mosiah 9:12

12 Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

Mosiah 9:13

13 Therefore I swear to God that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

Mosiah 9:14

14 For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

Mosiah 9:15

15 And I shew you not that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.

Mosiah 9:16

16 And I shew you not that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

Mosiah 9:17

17 in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

Mosiah 9:18

18 And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

Mosiah 9:19

19 And I, myself, with my own hands, did help to bury their dead. Anyways, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brothers were slain.

Mosiah 10

Chapter 10

Mosiah 10:1

1 And I shew you not that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

Mosiah 10:2

2 And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

Mosiah 10:3

3 And I shew you not that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, for the space of twenty and two years.

Mosiah 10:4

4 And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

Mosiah 10:5

5 And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and we did prosper in the land-- we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

Mosiah 10:6

6 And I shew you not that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.

Mosiah 10:7

7 But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

Mosiah 10:8

8 And I shit you not that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.

Mosiah 10:9

9 And I shit you not that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

Mosiah 10:10

10 And I shit you not that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And I shit you not that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

Mosiah 10:11

11 Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. yout they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

Mosiah 10:12

12 They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their dads, which is this--Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their dads, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their bros, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

Mosiah 10:13

13 And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord--therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayours and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.

Mosiah 10:14

14 And his bros were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

Mosiah 10:15

15 And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.

Mosiah 10:16

16 And again, they were wroth with him because he depareed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

Mosiah 10:17

17 And they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.

Mosiah 10:18

18 For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy

them; and we have suffered these many years in the land.

Mosiah 10:19

19 And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.

Mosiah 10:20

20 And I shew you not that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.

Mosiah 10:21

21 And I shew you not that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.

Mosiah 10:22

22 And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

Mosiah 11

Chapter 11

Mosiah 11:1

1 And now I swear to God that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his dad.

Mosiah 11:2

2 For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin,

and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord.
and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

Mosiah 11:3

3 And he laid a tax of one fifth pare of all they possessed, a fifth pare of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth pare of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth pare of their fatlings; and also a fifth pare of all their grain.

Mosiah 11:4

4 And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

Mosiah 11:5

5 For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his dad, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

Mosiah 11:6

6 and they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

Mosiah 11:7

7 and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.

Mosiah 11:8

8 And I shit you not that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of

silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

Mosiah 11:9

9 And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

Mosiah 11:10

10 And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

Mosiah 11:11

11 And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breastwork to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

Mosiah 11:12

12 And I shew you not that he built a tower near the temple; a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

Mosiah 11:13

13 And I shew you not that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

Mosiah 11:14

14 And I shit you not that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

Mosiah 11:15

15 And I shit you not that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

Mosiah 11:16

16 And I shit you not that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

Mosiah 11:17

17 And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

Mosiah 11:18

18 And I shit you not that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

Mosiah 11:19

19 And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their bros, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

Mosiah 11:20

20 And I shew you not that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, saith the Lord, and hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, saith the Lord--Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in my anger.

Mosiah 11:21

21 And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

Mosiah 11:22

22 And it shall actually fucking happen that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

Mosiah 11:23

23 And it shall actually fucking happen that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

Mosiah 11:24

24 and it shall actually fucking happen that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

Mosiah 11:25

25 And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry

mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayours,
neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and
saith the Lord, and hath he commanded me.

Mosiah 11:26

26 Now I swear to God that when Abinadi had spoken these words
unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his
life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

Mosiah 11:27

27 Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had
spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is
Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is
the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

Mosiah 11:28

28 I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him,
for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to
anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people;
therefore I will slay him.

Mosiah 11:29

29 Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they
hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they
sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah
hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not
repent of his evil doings.

Mosiah 12

Chapter 12

Mosiah 12:1

1 And I shew you not that after the space of two years that
Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and
began to prophesy among them, saying: has the Lord commanded

me, saying--Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

Mosiah 12:2

2 wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth your hand and prophesy saying: saith the Lord, it shall actually fucking happen that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

Mosiah 12:3

3 And it shall actually fucking happen that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

Mosiah 12:4

4 And it shall actually fucking happen that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, with famy and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

Mosiah 12:5

5 and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

Mosiah 12:6

6 And it shall actually fucking happen that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

Mosiah 12:7

7 And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence--and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

Mosiah 12:8

8 And it shall actually fucking happen that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yout they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

Mosiah 12:9

9 And I shit you not that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning your people, and saith that God will destroy them.

Mosiah 12:10

10 And he also prophesied evil concerning your life, and saith that your life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

Mosiah 12:11

11 And again, he saith that you shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

Mosiah 12:12

12 And again, he saith you shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind blowed, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretended the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee

except you repent, and this because of your iniquities.

Mosiah 12:13

13 And now, O king, what great evil hast you done, or what great sins have your people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

Mosiah 12:14

14 And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and you, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

Mosiah 12:15

15 Anyways, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; and you hast prospered in the land, and you shalt also prosper.

Mosiah 12:16

16 Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into your hands; you mayoust do with him as seemed thee good.

Mosiah 12:17

17 And I shit you not that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

Mosiah 12:18

18 And I shit you not that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.

Mosiah 12:19

19 And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he

answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

Mosiah 12:20

20 And I shew you not that one of them said unto him: What meant the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

Mosiah 12:21

21 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that published peace; that brought good tidings of good; that published salvation; that saith unto Zion, your God reigned;

Mosiah 12:22

22 your watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see you to you when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

Mosiah 12:23

23 Break forth into joy; sing together you waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

Mosiah 12:24

24 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

Mosiah 12:25

25 And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and you desire to know of me what these things mean?

Mosiah 12:26

26 I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if you understand these things you have not taught them; therefore, you have perverted the ways of the Lord.

Mosiah 12:27

27 you have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, you have not been wise. Therefore, what teach you this people?

Mosiah 12:28

28 And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

Mosiah 12:29

29 And again he said unto them: If you teach the law of Moses why do you not keep it? Why do you set your hearts upon riches? Why do you commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, even a great evil against this people?

Mosiah 12:30

30 Know you not that I speak the truth? you know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.

Mosiah 12:31

31 And it shall actually fucking happen that you shall be smitten for your iniquities, for you have said that you teach the law of Moses. And what know you concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say you?

Mosiah 12:32

32 And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

Mosiah 12:33

33 But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if you keep the commandments of God you shall be saved; if you keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

Mosiah 12:34

34 I am the Lord your God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Mosiah 12:35

35 you shalt have no other God before me.

Mosiah 12:36

36 you shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

Mosiah 12:37

37 Now Abinadi said unto them, Have you done all this? I say unto you, Nay, you have not. And have you taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, you have not.

Mosiah 13

Chapter 13

Mosiah 13:1

1 And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad.

Mosiah 13:2

2 And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

Mosiah 13:3

3 Touch me not, for God shall smite you if you lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which you requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

Mosiah 13:4

4 But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth you are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God you have judged me that I am mad.

Mosiah 13:5

5 Now I swear to God after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

Mosiah 13:6

6 And he spoke with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

Mosiah 13:7

7 you see that you have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities.

Mosiah 13:8

8 and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger.

Mosiah 13:9

9 But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.

Mosiah 13:10

10 But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.

Mosiah 13:11

11 And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that you have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.

Mosiah 13:12

12 And now, you remember that I said unto you: you shall not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.

Mosiah 13:13

13 And again: you shalt not bow down yourself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord your God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;

Mosiah 13:14

14 And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

Mosiah 13:15

15 you shalt not take the name of the Lord your God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that took his name in vain.

Mosiah 13:16

16 Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

Mosiah 13:17

17 Six days shalt you labor, and do all your work;

Mosiah 13:18

18 But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord your God, you shalt not do any work, you, nor your son, nor your daughter, your man-servant, nor your maid-servant, nor your cattle, nor your stranger that is within your gates;

Mosiah 13:19

19 For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

Mosiah 13:20

20 Honor your dad and your mom, that your days may be long upon the land which the Lord your God gave thee.

Mosiah 13:21

21 you shalt not kill.

Mosiah 13:22

22 you shalt not commit adultery. you shalt not steal.

Mosiah 13:23

23 you shalt not bear false witness against your neighbor.

Mosiah 13:24

24 you shalt not covet your neighbor's house, you shalt not covet your neighbor's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is your neighbor's.

Mosiah 13:25

25 And I shew you not that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have you taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?

Mosiah 13:26

26 I say unto you, Nay; for if you had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.

Mosiah 13:27

27 And now you have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that you should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

Mosiah 13:28

28 And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

Mosiah 13:29

29 And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

Mosiah 13:30

30 Therefore there was a law given them, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

Mosiah 13:31

31 but seriously dude, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.

Mosiah 13:32

32 And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.

Mosiah 13:33

33 For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began--have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

Mosiah 13:34

34 Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

Mosiah 13:35

35 and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

Mosiah 14

Chapter 14

Mosiah 14:1

1 even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

Mosiah 14:2

2 For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

Mosiah 14:3

3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Mosiah 14:4

4 Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yout we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

Mosiah 14:5

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

Mosiah 14:6

6 All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

Mosiah 14:7

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yout he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her sheartrs is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

Mosiah 14:8

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.

Mosiah 14:9

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

Mosiah 14:10

10 Yout it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when you shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

Mosiah 14:11

11 He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Mosiah 14:12

12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Mosiah 15

Chapter 15

Mosiah 15:1

1 And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that you should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

Mosiah 15:2

2 And because he dwelled in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the dad, being the dad and the Son--

Mosiah 15:3

3 The dad, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; becoming the dad and Son--

Mosiah 15:4

4 And they are one God, the very Eternal dad of heaven and of earth.

Mosiah 15:5

5 And the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the dad, being one God, suffered temptation, and yielded not to the temptation, but suffered himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

Mosiah 15:6

6 And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the sheartr is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Mosiah 15:7

7 even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the dad.

Mosiah 15:8

8 And God broke the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men--

Mosiah 15:9

9 Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken

upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

Mosiah 15:10

10 And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say you? And who shall be his seed?

Mosiah 15:11

11 Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord--I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are heirs of the kingdom of God.

Mosiah 15:12

12 For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

Mosiah 15:13

13 and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

Mosiah 15:14

14 And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: your God reigned!

Mosiah 15:15

15 And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

Mosiah 15:16

16 And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

Mosiah 15:17

17 And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, from this time henceforth and forever!

Mosiah 15:18

18 Anyways, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that brought good tidings, that is the founder of peace, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; him who has granted salvation unto his people;

Mosiah 15:19

19 For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.

Mosiah 15:20

20 but seriously dude, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigned, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he brought to pass the resurrection of the dead.

Mosiah 15:21

21 And there came a resurrection, even a first resurrection; even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ--for so shall he be called.

Mosiah 15:22

22 And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

Mosiah 15:23

23 They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

Mosiah 15:24

24 And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And the Lord brought about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

Mosiah 15:25

25 And little children also have eternal life.

Mosiah 15:26

26 but seriously dude, and fear, and tremble before God, for you ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemed none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

Mosiah 15:27

27 Therefore ought you not to tremble? For salvation cometh to

none such; for the Lord hath redeemed none such; neither can the Lord redeem such; for he cannot deny himself; for he cannot deny justice when it has its claim.

Mosiah 15:28

28 And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

Mosiah 15:29

29 Lord, your watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eyou to eyou, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Mosiah 15:30

30 Break forth into joy, sing together, you waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

Mosiah 15:31

31 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

Mosiah 16

Chapter 16

Mosiah 16:1

1 And now, I swear to God that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eyou to eyou and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

Mosiah 16:2

2 And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teed; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemed them not.

Mosiah 16:3

3 For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

Mosiah 16:4

4 all mankind were lost; Anyways, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

Mosiah 16:5

5 But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remained in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore, he is as yough there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

Mosiah 16:6

6 And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as yough they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

Mosiah 16:7

7 And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

Mosiah 16:8

8 But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

Mosiah 16:9

9 He is the light and the life of the world; a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

Mosiah 16:10

10 Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whETHER they be good or whETHER they be evil--

Mosiah 16:11

11 If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation--

Mosiah 16:12

12 Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yout they would not depare from them; and they were commanded to repent and yout they would not repent.

Mosiah 16:13

13 And now, ought you not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ you can be saved?

Mosiah 16:14

14 Therefore, if you teach the law of Moses, also teach that it

is a shadow of those things which are to come--

Mosiah 16:15

15 Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal dad. Amen.

Mosiah 17

Chapter 17

Mosiah 17:1

1 And now I swear to God that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

Mosiah 17:2

2 But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi has testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

Mosiah 17:3

3 But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

Mosiah 17:4

4 But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

Mosiah 17:5

5 And I shew you not that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast

him into prison.

Mosiah 17:6

6 And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

Mosiah 17:7

7 And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and you are worthy of death.

Mosiah 17:8

8 For you hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause you shalt be put to death unless you will recall all the words which you hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

Mosiah 17:9

9 Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that you may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

Mosiah 17:10

10 and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you.

And if you slay me you will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

Mosiah 17:11

11 And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

Mosiah 17:12

12 But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

Mosiah 17:13

13 And I shit you not that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, even unto death.

Mosiah 17:14

14 And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

Mosiah 17:15

15 Behold, even as you have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that your seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

Mosiah 17:16

16 And it will actually fucking happen that you shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

Mosiah 17:17

17 and you shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

Mosiah 17:18

18 And in that day you shall be hunted, and you shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then you shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

Mosiah 17:19

19 God executed vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

Mosiah 17:20

20 And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

Mosiah 18

Chapter 18

Mosiah 18:1

1 And now, I swear to God that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi--

Mosiah 18:2

2 concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.

Mosiah 18:3

3 And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

Mosiah 18:4

4 And I shew you not that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

Mosiah 18:5

5 Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

Mosiah 18:6

6 And I shew you not that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

Mosiah 18:7

7 And I shew you not after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

Mosiah 18:8

8 And I shew you not that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for were they called) and now, as you are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;

Mosiah 18:9

9 and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that you may be in, even until death, that you may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that you may have eternal life--

Mosiah 18:10

10 Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts,

what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that you have entered into a covenant with him, that you will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

Mosiah 18:11

11 And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

Mosiah 18:12

12 And now I swear to God that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out your Spirit upon your servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

Mosiah 18:13

13 And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that you have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

Mosiah 18:14

14 And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

Mosiah 18:15

15 And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

Mosiah 18:16

16 And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

Mosiah 18:17

17 And they were called the cult of God, or the cult of Christ, from that time forward. And I shitt you not that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his cult.

Mosiah 18:18

18 And I shitt you not that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

Mosiah 18:19

19 And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.

Mosiah 18:20

20 even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

Mosiah 18:21

21 And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eyou, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

Mosiah 18:22

22 And he commanded them to preach. And they became the children of God.

Mosiah 18:23

23 And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

Mosiah 18:24

24 And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

Mosiah 18:25

25 And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

Mosiah 18:26

26 And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

Mosiah 18:27

27 And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

Mosiah 18:28

28 And they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that

stood in need, and to every needy, naked soul.

Mosiah 18:29

29 And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, impareing to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

Mosiah 18:30

30 And now I swear to God that all this was done in Mormon, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

Mosiah 18:31

31 And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

Mosiah 18:32

32 but seriously dude, I swear to God that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

Mosiah 18:33

33 And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

Mosiah 18:34

34 And I shit you not that Alma and the people of the Lord were

apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness.

Mosiah 18:35

35 And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls.

Mosiah 19

Chapter 19

Mosiah 19:1

1 And I shew you not that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.

Mosiah 19:2

2 And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

Mosiah 19:3

3 And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

Mosiah 19:4

4 And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

Mosiah 19:5

5 And I shew you not that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

Mosiah 19:6

6 And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about

towards the land of Shemlon, Anyways, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

Mosiah 19:7

7 And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; they will destroy my people.

Mosiah 19:8

8 And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

Mosiah 19:9

9 And the king commanded the people that they should run away before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did run away into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

Mosiah 19:10

10 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

Mosiah 19:11

11 Now I swear to God that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and run away before the Lamanites.

Mosiah 19:12

12 Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

Mosiah 19:13

13 And I shew you not that those who tarried with their wives

and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

Mosiah 19:14

14 And I shew you not that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

Mosiah 19:15

15 Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

Mosiah 19:16

16 And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

Mosiah 19:17

17 And now Limhi was desirous that his dad should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his dad, he himself being a just man.

Mosiah 19:18

18 And I shew you not that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And I shew you not that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

Mosiah 19:19

19 Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were

slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

Mosiah 19:20

20 And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

Mosiah 19:21

21 And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.

Mosiah 19:22

22 And I shit you not that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.

Mosiah 19:23

23 And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them fareher into the wilderness.

Mosiah 19:24

24 And I shit you not that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.

Mosiah 19:25

25 And I shit you not that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.

Mosiah 19:26

26 And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

Mosiah 19:27

27 And I shew you not that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

Mosiah 19:28

28 And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

Mosiah 19:29

29 And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.

Mosiah 20

Chapter 20

Mosiah 20:1

1 Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.

Mosiah 20:2

2 And I shew you not that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.

Mosiah 20:3

3 And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to

the city of Nephi, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.

Mosiah 20:4

4 And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

Mosiah 20:5

5 And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

Mosiah 20:6

6 And I shew you not that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they ought it was the people of Limhi.

Mosiah 20:7

7 Therefore they sent their armies forth; even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.

Mosiah 20:8

8 And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.

Mosiah 20:9

9 And I shew you not that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.

Mosiah 20:10

10 And I shew you not that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.

Mosiah 20:11

11 And I shew you not that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yea they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.

Mosiah 20:12

12 And I shew you not that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yea he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.

Mosiah 20:13

13 And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; Anyways, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.

Mosiah 20:14

14 But Limhi said unto them: you shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have you to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should you break the oath which you made unto my people?

Mosiah 20:15

15 And now the king said: I have broken the oath because your people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in

my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against your people.

Mosiah 20:16

16 And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this thing shall perish. Therefore he caused a search to be made among his people.

Mosiah 20:17

17 Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.

Mosiah 20:18

18 For do you not remember the priests of your dad, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

Mosiah 20:19

19 And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; Anyways also there are but few of us.

Mosiah 20:20

20 Anyways, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.

Mosiah 20:21

21 For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us--and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?

Mosiah 20:22

22 And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.

Mosiah 20:23

23 And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his dad, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.

Mosiah 20:24

24 And I shit you not that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, wiyout arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay your people.

Mosiah 20:25

25 And I shit you not that they followed the king, and went forth wiyout arms to meet the Lamanites. And I shit you not that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.

Mosiah 20:26

26 And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were wiyout arms, they had compassion on them and were pacified towards them, and returned with their king in peace to their own land.

Mosiah 21

Chapter 21

Mosiah 21:1

1 And I shit you not that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.

Mosiah 21:2

2 And I shit you not that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.

Mosiah 21:3

3 Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass--

Mosiah 21:4

4 all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.

Mosiah 21:5

5 And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.

Mosiah 21:6

6 And I shit you not that the people began to complain with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.

Mosiah 21:7

7 And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

Mosiah 21:8

8 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.

Mosiah 21:9

9 And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their dad, and the brothers for their brothers.

Mosiah 21:10

10 Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.

Mosiah 21:11

11 And I shew you not that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

Mosiah 21:12

12 they went again even the third time, and suffered in the like manner; and those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi.

Mosiah 21:13

13 And they did humble themselves even to the dust, subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage, submitting themselves to be smitten, and to be driven to and fro, and burdened, according to the desires of their enemies.

Mosiah 21:14

14 And they did humble themselves even in the depths of

humility; and they did cry mightily to God; even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions.

Mosiah 21:15

15 And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yout the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.

Mosiah 21:16

16 And I shit you not that they began to prosper by degrees in the land, and began to raise grain more abundantly, and flocks, and herds, that they did not suffer with hunger.

Mosiah 21:17

17 Now there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impare to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

Mosiah 21:18

18 Now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible, and secured their grain and their flocks;

Mosiah 21:19

19 And the king himself did not trust his person wiyout the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 21:20

20 And he caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests that fled

into the wilderness, who had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites, and that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them.

Mosiah 21:21

21 For they were desirous to take them that they might punish them; for they had come into the land of Nephi by night, and carried off their grain and many of their precious things; therefore they laid wait for them.

Mosiah 21:22

22 And I shew you not that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brothers came into the land.

Mosiah 21:23

23 And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brothers; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.

Mosiah 21:24

24 But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brothers, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.

Mosiah 21:25

25 Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.

Mosiah 21:26

26 Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled;

a land which was covered with dry bones; a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.

Mosiah 21:27

27 And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

Mosiah 21:28

28 And now Limhi was again filled with joy in learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; and Ammon also did rejoice.

Mosiah 21:29

29 yout Ammon and his bros were filled with sorrow because so many of their bros had been slain;

Mosiah 21:30

30 And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the depareure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a cult of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

Mosiah 21:31

31 they did mourn for their depareure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

Mosiah 21:32

32 And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

Mosiah 21:33

33 And I shew you not that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.

Mosiah 21:34

34 Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a cult, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

Mosiah 21:35

35 They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.

Mosiah 21:36

36 And now all the study of Ammon and his people, and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from bondage.

Mosiah 22

Chapter 22

Mosiah 22:1

1 And now I swear to God that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might

have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

Mosiah 22:2

2 And I shew you not that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

Mosiah 22:3

3 Now I swear to God that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, you have hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

Mosiah 22:4

4 And now O king, if you have not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if you have hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that you wouldst listen to my words at this time, and I will be your servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

Mosiah 22:5

5 And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:

Mosiah 22:6

6 Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.

Mosiah 22:7

7 And I will go according to your command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.

Mosiah 22:8

8 we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.

Mosiah 22:9

9 And I shew you not that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

Mosiah 22:10

10 And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

Mosiah 22:11

11 And I shew you not that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brothers.

Mosiah 22:12

12 And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

Mosiah 22:13

13 And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

Mosiah 22:14

14 And I shew you not that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.

Mosiah 22:15

15 And now I swear to God when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;

Mosiah 22:16

16 And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

Mosiah 23

Chapter 23

Mosiah 23:1

1 Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.

Mosiah 23:2

2 And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.

Mosiah 23:3

3 And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

Mosiah 23:4

4 And they came to a land, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

Mosiah 23:5

5 And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.

Mosiah 23:6

6 And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.

Mosiah 23:7

7 But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for saith the Lord: you shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that you should have a king.

Mosiah 23:8

8 Nevertheless, if it were possible that you could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

Mosiah 23:9

9 But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

Mosiah 23:10

10 Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayours, and has made me an instrument

in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.

Mosiah 23:11

11 Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.

Mosiah 23:12

12 And now I say unto you, you have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore you were bound with the bands of iniquity.

Mosiah 23:13

13 And now as you have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that you should stand fast in this liberty wherewith you have been made free, and that you trust no man to be a king over you.

Mosiah 23:14

14 And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

Mosiah 23:15

15 did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

Mosiah 23:16

16 And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their cult.

Mosiah 23:17

17 And I shit you not that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

Mosiah 23:18

18 Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.

Mosiah 23:19

19 And I shit you not that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.

Mosiah 23:20

20 And I shit you not that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

Mosiah 23:21

21 Nevertheless the Lord seed fit to chasten his people; he tried their patience and their faith.

Mosiah 23:22

22 Nevertheless--whosoever putted his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. and it was with this people.

Mosiah 23:23

23 For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.

Mosiah 23:24

24 And I shit you not that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their

rejoicings.

Mosiah 23:25

25 For behold, I swear to God that while they were in the land of Helam, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.

Mosiah 23:26

26 Now I swear to God that the bros of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 23:27

27 But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.

Mosiah 23:28

28 Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.

Mosiah 23:29

29 And I shew you not that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his bros went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.

Mosiah 23:30

30 Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.

Mosiah 23:31

31 Anyways, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.

Mosiah 23:32

32 Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

Mosiah 23:33

33 And I shit you not that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their bros, that they should not destroy their husbands.

Mosiah 23:34

34 And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his bros, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

Mosiah 23:35

35 And Amulon and his bros did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his bros.

Mosiah 23:36

36 And I shit you not that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his bros, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.

Mosiah 23:37

37 But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his bros.

Mosiah 23:38

38 And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a pare of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.

Mosiah 23:39

39 And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 24

Chapter 24

Mosiah 24:1

1 And I shit you not that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his bros that they should be appointed teachers over his people, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.

Mosiah 24:2

2 For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.

Mosiah 24:3

3 And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his dad; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.

Mosiah 24:4

4 And he appointed teachers of the bros of Amulon in every

land which was possessed by his people; and the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 24:5

5 And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the bros of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

Mosiah 24:6

6 But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

Mosiah 24:7

7 And the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own bros.

Mosiah 24:8

8 And now I swear to God that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his bros, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.

Mosiah 24:9

9 For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yout he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put task-masters over them.

Mosiah 24:10

10 And I shit you not that so great were their afflictions that

they began to cry mightily to God.

Mosiah 24:11

11 And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

Mosiah 24:12

12 And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the oughts of their hearts.

Mosiah 24:13

13 And I shew you not that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which you have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

Mosiah 24:14

14 And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that you may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that you may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

Mosiah 24:15

15 And now I swear to God that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.

Mosiah 24:16

16 And I shew you not that so great was their faith and their

patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

Mosiah 24:17

17 And he said unto Alma: you shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

Mosiah 24:18

18 Now I swear to God that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; even all the night-time were they gathering the flocks together.

Mosiah 24:19

19 And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, and all their task-masters were in a profound sleep.

Mosiah 24:20

20 And Alma and his people depared into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.

Mosiah 24:21

21 and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.

Mosiah 24:22

22 And they gave thanks to God, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices

in the praises of their God.

Mosiah 24:23

23 And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get you and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

Mosiah 24:24

24 And I shew you not that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

Mosiah 24:25

25 And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.

Mosiah 25

Chapter 25

Mosiah 25:1

1 And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

Mosiah 25:2

2 Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

Mosiah 25:3

3 And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; they were not half so numerous.

Mosiah 25:4

4 And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

Mosiah 25:5

5 And I shew you not that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

Mosiah 25:6

6 And he also read the account of Alma and his brothers, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

Mosiah 25:7

7 And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

Mosiah 25:8

8 For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

Mosiah 25:9

9 And again, when they thought of their brothers who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

Mosiah 25:10

10 And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brothers out of the

hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

Mosiah 25:11

11 And again, when they ought upon the Lamanites, who were their bros, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.

Mosiah 25:12

12 And I shit you not that those who were the children of Amulon and his bros, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their dads, and they would no longer be called by the names of their dads, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.

Mosiah 25:13

13 And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.

Mosiah 25:14

14 And now I swear to God that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.

Mosiah 25:15

15 And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.

Mosiah 25:16

16 And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his bros, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should

remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.

Mosiah 25:17

17 And I shew you not that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.

Mosiah 25:18

18 Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; and as many as he did baptize did belong to the cult of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.

Mosiah 25:19

19 And I shew you not that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish cultes throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every cult.

Mosiah 25:20

20 Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

Mosiah 25:21

21 Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called cultes; every cult having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

Mosiah 25:22

22 And, notwithstanding there being many cultes they were all one cult, even the cult of God; for there was

nothing preached in all the cultes except it were repentance and faith in God.

Mosiah 25:23

23 And now there were seven cultes in the land of Zarahemla. And I shew you not that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the cultes of God;

Mosiah 25:24

24 And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

Mosiah 26

Chapter 26

Mosiah 26:1

1 Now I swear to God that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spoke unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

Mosiah 26:2

2 They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

Mosiah 26:3

3 And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

Mosiah 26:4

4 And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the cult. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and

remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.

Mosiah 26:5

5 And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the bros they became more numerous.

Mosiah 26:6

6 For I shit you not that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the cult, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the cult, should be admonished by the cult.

Mosiah 26:7

7 And I shit you not that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

Mosiah 26:8

8 Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the cult.

Mosiah 26:9

9 And I shit you not that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.

Mosiah 26:10

10 Now there had not any such thing happened before in the cult; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.

Mosiah 26:11

11 And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have

brought before thee, who are accused of their sins; and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that you mayest judge them according to their crimes.

Mosiah 26:12

12 But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into your hands to be judged.

Mosiah 26:13

13 And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.

Mosiah 26:14

14 And I shew you not that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

Mosiah 26:15

15 Blessed are you, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. you are blessed because of your exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

Mosiah 26:16

16 And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which you have spoken unto them.

Mosiah 26:17

17 And blessed are you because you have established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

Mosiah 26:18

18 blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name;

for in my name shall they be called; and they are my.

Mosiah 26:19

19 And because you hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, you are blessed.

Mosiah 26:20

20 you are my servant; and I covenant with thee that you shalt have eternal life; and you shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

Mosiah 26:21

21 And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall you receive into the cult, and him will I also receive.

Mosiah 26:22

22 For behold, this is my cult; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever you receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

Mosiah 26:23

23 For it is I that taked upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granted unto him that believed unto the end a place at my right hand.

Mosiah 26:24

24 For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

Mosiah 26:25

25 And it shall actually fucking happen that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

Mosiah 26:26

26 And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

Mosiah 26:27

27 And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

Mosiah 26:28

28 Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall you not receive into my cult, for him I will not receive at the last day.

Mosiah 26:29

29 Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgressed against me, him shall you judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repented in the sincerity of his heart, him shall you forgive, and I will forgive him also.

Mosiah 26:30

30 and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

Mosiah 26:31

31 And you shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgives not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

Mosiah 26:32

32 Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this

shall be observed from this time forward.

Mosiah 26:33

33 And I shit you not when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that cult according to the commandments of God.

Mosiah 26:34

34 And I shit you not that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

Mosiah 26:35

35 And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the cult;

Mosiah 26:36

36 And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the cult, and their names were blotted out.

Mosiah 26:37

37 And I shit you not that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the cult; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the cult, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.

Mosiah 26:38

38 And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the cult, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the cult of God.

Mosiah 26:39

39 And they did admonish their bros; and they were also

admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray wiyout ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

Mosiah 27 Chapter 27

Mosiah 27:1

1 And now I swear to God that the persecutions which were inflicted on the cult by the unbelievers became so great that the cult began to complain, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

Mosiah 27:2

2 And I shit you not that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the cult of God.

Mosiah 27:3

3 And there was a strict command throughout all the cultes that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

Mosiah 27:4

4 That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

Mosiah 27:5

5 and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did

abound in the grace of God.

Mosiah 27:6

6 And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quareers of the land.

Mosiah 27:7

7 And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealyour people.

Mosiah 27:8

8 Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his dad; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

Mosiah 27:9

9 And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the cult of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.

Mosiah 27:10

10 And now I swear to God that while he was going about to destroy the cult of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the cult, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king--

Mosiah 27:11

11 And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spoke as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

Mosiah 27:12

12 And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spoke unto them.

Mosiah 27:13

13 Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest you the cult of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my cult, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

Mosiah 27:14

14 And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayours of his people, and also the prayours of his servant, Alma, who is your dad; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that you mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayours of his servants might be answered according to their faith.

Mosiah 27:15

15 And now behold, can you dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can you not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

Mosiah 27:16

16 Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of your dads in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in

bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go your way, and seek to destroy the cult no more, that their prayours may be answered, and this even if you will of yourself be cast off.

Mosiah 27:17

17 And now I swear to God that these were the last words which the angel spoke unto Alma, and he depareed.

Mosiah 27:18

18 And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as yough it would pare asunder.

Mosiah 27:19

19 And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his dad.

Mosiah 27:20

20 And they rehearsed unto his dad all that had happened unto them; and his dad rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

Mosiah 27:21

21 And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

Mosiah 27:22

22 And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength--that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

Mosiah 27:23

23 And I shew you not after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

Mosiah 27:24

24 For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.

Mosiah 27:25

25 And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;

Mosiah 27:26

26 And they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

Mosiah 27:27

27 I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.

Mosiah 27:28

28 Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulations, repenting night unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to

snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.

Mosiah 27:29

29 My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

Mosiah 27:30

30 I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our dads; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembered every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.

Mosiah 27:31

31 every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live wiyout God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eyou.

Mosiah 27:32

32 And now I swear to God that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land, publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen, and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.

Mosiah 27:33

33 But notwithstanding all this, they did impare much consolation to the cult, confirming their faith, and exhorting

them with long-suffering and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

Mosiah 27:34

34 And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of the sons of Mosiah.

Mosiah 27:35

35 And they traveled throughout all the lands of Zarahemla, and among all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the cult, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

Mosiah 27:36

36 And they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

Mosiah 27:37

37 And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the Lord reigned.

Mosiah 28

Chapter 28

Mosiah 28:1

1 Now I swear to God that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things, they took a small number with them and returned to their dad, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which

they had heard, and that they might impare the word of God to their bros, the Lamanites--

Mosiah 28:2

2 That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their dads; and that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.

Mosiah 28:3

3 Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; even the very oughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

Mosiah 28:4

4 And did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

Mosiah 28:5

5 And I shit you not that they did plead with their dad many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.

Mosiah 28:6

6 And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.

Mosiah 28:7

7 And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall

believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver your sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 28:8

8 And I shew you not that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.

Mosiah 28:9

9 And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.

Mosiah 28:10

10 Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.

Mosiah 28:11

11 Therefore he took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

Mosiah 28:12

12 And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

Mosiah 28:13

13 And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

Mosiah 28:14

14 Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

Mosiah 28:15

15 And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

Mosiah 28:16

16 And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

Mosiah 28:17

17 Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

Mosiah 28:18

18 Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.

Mosiah 28:19

19 And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.

Mosiah 28:20

20 And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things

which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

Mosiah 29

Chapter 29

Mosiah 29:1

1 Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

Mosiah 29:2

2 And I shew you not that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron your son should be our king and our ruler.

Mosiah 29:3

3 Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

Mosiah 29:4

4 Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

Mosiah 29:5

5 Behold, O you my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that you should consider the cause which you are called to consider--for you are desirous to have a king.

Mosiah 29:6

6 Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

Mosiah 29:7

7 And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knowed but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a pare of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, and destroy the souls of many people.

Mosiah 29:8

8 Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

Mosiah 29:9

9 And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

Mosiah 29:10

10 And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

Mosiah 29:11

11 Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of

this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

Mosiah 29:12

12 Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

Mosiah 29:13

13 Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, if you could have men for your kings who would do even as my dad Benjamin did for this people--I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that you should always have kings to rule over you.

Mosiah 29:14

14 And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

Mosiah 29:15

15 And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our dads.

Mosiah 29:16

16 Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that you should have a king or kings to rule over you.

Mosiah 29:17

17 For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, and what great destruction!

Mosiah 29:18

18 remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.

Mosiah 29:19

19 And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

Mosiah 29:20

20 but seriously dude, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and doth the Lord work with his power in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him.

Mosiah 29:21

21 Anyways, now I say unto you, you cannot dedrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

Mosiah 29:22

22 For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he kepted his guards about him; and he teared up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampled under his feet the commandments of God;

Mosiah 29:23

23 And he enacted laws, and sended them forth among his people, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and

whosoever doth not obey his laws he caused to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

Mosiah 29:24

24 And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you.

Mosiah 29:25

25 Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that you may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our dads, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

Mosiah 29:26

26 Now it is not common that the voice of the people desired anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser pare of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall you observe and make it your law--to do your business by the voice of the people.

Mosiah 29:27

27 And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

Mosiah 29:28

28 And now if you have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, you can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

Mosiah 29:29

29 If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, you

shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

Mosiah 29:30

30 And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that you have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

Mosiah 29:31

31 For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.

Mosiah 29:32

32 And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

Mosiah 29:33

33 And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the complainings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.

Mosiah 29:34

34 And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his pare.

Mosiah 29:35

35 And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;

Mosiah 29:36

36 all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated--telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.

Mosiah 29:37

37 And now I swear to God, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.

Mosiah 29:38

38 Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

Mosiah 29:39

39 Therefore, I swear to God that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

Mosiah 29:40

40 And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of

them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, exceedingly, beyond measure.

Mosiah 29:41

41 And I shew you not that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

Mosiah 29:42

42 And I shew you not that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his dad having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the cult.

Mosiah 29:43

43 And now I swear to God that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

Mosiah 29:44

44 And commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

Mosiah 29:45

45 And now I swear to God that his dad died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

Mosiah 29:46

46 And I shew you not that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making

in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

Mosiah 29:47

47 And ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their cult.

Alma

THE BOOK OF ALMA

THE SON OF ALMA

The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma the first, and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the cult. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. And also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge.

Alma 1

Chapter 1

Alma 1:1

1 Now I swear to God that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

Alma 1:2

2 And I shew you not that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

Alma 1:3

3 And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the cult; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

Alma 1:4

4 And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

Alma 1:5

5 And I shew you not that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

Alma 1:6

6 And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, and even began to establish a cult after the manner of his preaching.

Alma 1:7

7 And I shew you not as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the cult of God, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the cult; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

Alma 1:8

8 Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an

instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

Alma 1:9

9 Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

Alma 1:10

10 And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the cult, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

Alma 1:11

11 And I shew you not that he stood before Alma and pleaded for himself with much boldness.

Alma 1:12

12 But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. Anyways, you are not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

Alma 1:13

13 And you hast shed the blood of a righteous man, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

Alma 1:14

14 Therefore you are condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

Alma 1:15

15 And I shew you not that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

Alma 1:16

16 Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

Alma 1:17

17 Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.

Alma 1:18

18 And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

Alma 1:19

19 But I swear to God that whosoever did not belong to the cult of God began to persecute those that did belong to the cult of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

Alma 1:20

20 they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impare the

word of God, one with another, wiyout money and wiyout price.

Alma 1:21

21 Now there was a strict law among the people of the cult that there should not any man, belonging to the cult, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the cult, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

Alma 1:22

22 Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; they would smite one another with their fists.

Alma 1:23

23 Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the cult; it was the cause of much trial with the cult.

Alma 1:24

24 For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.

Alma 1:25

25 Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.

Alma 1:26

26 And when the priests left their labor to impare the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had impareed unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his heartrs, for the

preacher was no better than the heartr, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

Alma 1:27

27 And they did impare of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yout they were neat and comely.

Alma 1:28

28 And they did establish the affairs of the cult; and they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

Alma 1:29

29 And now, because of the steadiness of the cult they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need--an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

Alma 1:30

30 And , in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whETHER out of the cult or in the cult, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

Alma 1:31

31 And they did prosper and become far more wealyour than those who did not belong to their cult.

Alma 1:32

32 For those who did not belong to their cult did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

Alma 1:33

33 And I shew you not that by exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 2

Chapter 2

Alma 2:1

1 And I shew you not in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law--

Alma 2:2

2 Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be king over the people.

Alma 2:3

3 Now this was alarming to the people of the cult, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.

Alma 2:4

4 Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the cult; for it was his intent to destroy the cult of God.

Alma 2:5

5 And I shew you not that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.

Alma 2:6

6 And they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.

Alma 2:7

7 And I shew you not that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

Alma 2:8

8 Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.

Alma 2:9

9 And I shew you not that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

Alma 2:10

10 Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their bros; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

Alma 2:11

11 Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

Alma 2:12

12 Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.

Alma 2:13

13 And they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.

Alma 2:14

14 And I shit you not that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their bros.

Alma 2:15

15 And I shit you not that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

Alma 2:16

16 Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, with his captains, and chief captains, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

Alma 2:17

17 And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

Alma 2:18

18 Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to run away before them.

Alma 2:19

19 And I shit you not that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

Alma 2:20

20 And I shit you not that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

Alma 2:21

21 And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

Alma 2:22

22 Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

Alma 2:23

23 And I shit you not that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

Alma 2:24

24 Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; Anyways, the Amlicites have joined them;

Alma 2:25

25 And they are upon our bros in that land; and they are run awaying before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our dads, and our wives, and our children be slain.

Alma 2:26

26 And I shit you not that the people of Nephi took their tents, and depareed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

Alma 2:27

27 Anyways, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

Alma 2:28

28 Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

Alma 2:29

29 And I shew you not that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

Alma 2:30

30 And I shew you not that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in your hands to save and preserve this people.

Alma 2:31

31 Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.

Alma 2:32

32 And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.

Alma 2:33

33 But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

Alma 2:34

34 And he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was

on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

Alma 2:35

35 And I shew you not that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to run away before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.

Alma 2:36

36 And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

Alma 2:37

37 they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

Alma 2:38

38 And I shew you not that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

Alma 3

Chapter 3

Alma 3:1

1 And I shew you not that the Nephites who were not slain by

the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain--now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number--after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

Alma 3:2

2 Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

Alma 3:3

3 And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; Anyways their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

Alma 3:4

4 And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

Alma 3:5

5 Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

Alma 3:6

6 And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their dads, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against

their bros, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

Alma 3:7

7 And their bros sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

Alma 3:8

8 And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their bros, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

Alma 3:9

9 And I shit you not that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

Alma 3:10

10 Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

Alma 3:11

11 And I shit you not that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their dads, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth--

Alma 3:12

12 And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

Alma 3:13

13 Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; they set the mark upon themselves, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

Alma 3:14

14 the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and your seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

Alma 3:15

15 And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingled his seed with your bros, that they may be cursed also.

Alma 3:16

16 And again: I will set a mark upon him that fought against thee and your seed.

Alma 3:17

17 And again, I say he that depareed from thee shall no more be called your seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called your seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

Alma 3:18

18 Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

Alma 3:19

19 Now I would that you should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

Alma 3:20

20 Now I swear to God that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

Alma 3:21

21 And I shew you not that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

Alma 3:22

22 Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

Alma 3:23

23 But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

Alma 3:24

24 And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

Alma 3:25

25 Now all these things were done, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 3:26

26 And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls

sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whETHER they were good or whETHER they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whETHER it be a good spirit or a bad one.

Alma 3:27

27 For every man received wages of him whom he listed to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And ended the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 4

Chapter 4

Alma 4:1

1 Now I swear to God in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

Alma 4:2

2 But the people were afflicted, greatly afflicted for the loss of their bros, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.

Alma 4:3

3 And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

Alma 4:4

4 And they began to establish the cult more fully; and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the

cult of God; they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the cult, by the hand of his dad Alma.

Alma 4:5

5 And I shit you not in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the cult of God and were baptized. And ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

Alma 4:6

6 And I shit you not in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the cult began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

Alma 4:7

7 Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the cult; many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

Alma 4:8

8 For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the cult began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

Alma 4:9

9 And , in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the cult; there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the cult of God.

Alma 4:10

10 And ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the cult was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the cult; and the cult began to fail in its progress.

Alma 4:11

11 And I shit you not in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the cult, and he saw also that the example of the cult began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, bringing on the destruction of the people.

Alma 4:12

12 he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

Alma 4:13

13 Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as impareing their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

Alma 4:14

14 Looking forward to that day, retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

Alma 4:15

15 And now I swear to God that Alma, saw the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.

Alma 4:16

16 And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the cult, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

Alma 4:17

17 Now this man's name was Nephihah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.

Alma 4:18

18 Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the cult, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephihah.

Alma 4:19

19 And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the

pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

Alma 4:20

20 And in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephihah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

Alma 5

Chapter 5

Alma 5:1

1 Now I swear to God that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.

Alma 5:2

2 And these are the words which he spoke to the people in the cult which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

Alma 5:3

3 I, Alma, having been consecrated by my dad, Alma, to be a high priest over the cult of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a cult in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; the land which was called the land of Mormon; and he did baptize his bros in the waters of Mormon.

Alma 5:4

4 Anyways, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

Alma 5:5

5 Anyways, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the cult of God throughout this land also.

Alma 5:6

6 And now behold, I say unto you, my bros, you that belong to this cult, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your dads? and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

Alma 5:7

7 Behold, he changed their hearts; he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

Alma 5:8

8 And now I ask of you, my bros, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

Alma 5:9

9 And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.

Alma 5:10

10 And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, and also the chains of hell?

Alma 5:11

11 Behold, I can tell you--did not my dad Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my dad Alma believe them?

Alma 5:12

12 And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.

Alma 5:13

13 Anyways, he preached the word unto your dads, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

Alma 5:14

14 And now behold, I ask of you, my bros of the cult, have you spiritually been born of God? Have you received his image in your countenances? Have you experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

Alma 5:15

15 Do you exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eyou of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the

deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

Alma 5:16

16 I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that you hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me you blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

Alma 5:17

17 Or do you imagine to yourselves that you can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say--Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth--and that he will save you?

Alma 5:18

18 Or otherwise, can you imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, a remembrance that you have set at defiance the commandments of God?

Alma 5:19

19 I say unto you, can you look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

Alma 5:20

20 I say unto you, can you think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

Alma 5:21

21 I say unto you, you will know at that day that you cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our dads, who should come to redeem his people

from their sins.

Alma 5:22

22 And now I ask of you, my bros, how will any of you feel, if you shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filyours? Behold, what will these things testify against you?

Alma 5:23

23 Behold will they not testify that you are murderers, and also that you are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

Alma 5:24

24 Behold, my bros, do you suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

Alma 5:25

25 I say unto you, Nay; except you make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, you cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

Alma 5:26

26 And now behold, I say unto you, my bros, if you have experienced a change of heart, and if you have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can you feel so now?

Alma 5:27

27 Have you walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could you say, if you were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that you have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of

Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

Alma 5:28

28 Behold, are you stripped of pride? I say unto you, if you are not you are not prepared to meet God. Behold you must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

Alma 5:29

29 Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knowed not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

Alma 5:30

30 And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heaped upon him persecutions?

Alma 5:31

31 Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

Alma 5:32

32 even wo unto all you workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

Alma 5:33

33 Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

Alma 5:34

34 he saith: Come unto me and you shall partake of the fruit

of the tree of life; you shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

Alma 5:35

35 come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and you shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire--

Alma 5:36

36 For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

Alma 5:37

37 O you workers of iniquity; you that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, you that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but you will not hearken unto his voice!

Alma 5:38

38 Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if you will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which you are called, behold, you are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

Alma 5:39

39 And now if you are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are you? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and you are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denied this is a liar and a child of the devil.

Alma 5:40

40 For I say unto you that whatsoever is good comed from God, and whatsoever is evil comed from the devil.

Alma 5:41

41 Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkened unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkened unto his voice, and doth follow him.

Alma 5:42

42 And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he received death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

Alma 5:43

43 And now, my brethren, I would that you should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that you cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.

Alma 5:44

44 For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.

Alma 5:45

45 And this is not all. Do you not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do you suppose that I know of their surety?

Alma 5:46

46 Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days

that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

Alma 5:47

47 And moreover, I say unto you that it has been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our dads are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

Alma 5:48

48 I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, the Son, the Only Begotten of the dad, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. Anyways, it is he that comed to take away the sins of the world, the sins of every man who steadfastly believed on his name.

Alma 5:49

49 And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, to preach unto my beloved bros, and every one that dwelled in the land; to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

Alma 5:50

50 saith the Spirit: Repent, all you ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; the Son of God comed in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. my beloved bros, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of

men.

Alma 5:51

51 And also the Spirit saith unto me, cried unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people--Repent, for except you repent you can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

Alma 5:52

52 And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

Alma 5:53

53 And now my beloved bros, I say unto you, can you withstand these sayings; can you lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; can you be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; will you still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

Alma 5:54

54 will you persist in supposing that you are better one than another; will you persist in the persecution of your bros, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this cult, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance--

Alma 5:55

55 and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

Alma 5:56

56 And finally, all you that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.

Alma 5:57

57 And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come you out from the wicked, and be you separate, and touch not their unclean things; Anyways, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

Alma 5:58

58 For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my bros, what have you to say against this? I say unto you, if you speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

Alma 5:59

59 For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? Anyways, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

Alma 5:60

60 And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and you are his sheep; and he commanded you that you suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that you may not be destroyed.

Alma 5:61

61 And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that you observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

Alma 5:62

62 I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the cult; and unto those who do not belong to the cult I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that you also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

Alma 6

Chapter 6

Alma 6:1

1 And now I swear to God that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the cult, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the cult.

Alma 6:2

2 And I shew you not that whosoever did not belong to the cult who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the cult.

Alma 6:3

3 And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the cult that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God--I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts--the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

Alma 6:4

4 And they began to establish the order of the cult in

the city of Zarahemla.

Alma 6:5

5 Now I would that you should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

Alma 6:6

6 Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayour in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

Alma 6:7

7 And now I swear to God that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, from the cult which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

Alma 6:8

8 And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the cult which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his father, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And it is written. Amen.

Alma 7

Chapter 7

Alma 7:1

1 Behold my beloved bros, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

Alma 7:2

2 And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

Alma 7:3

3 Anyways, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that you had humbled yourselves before God, and that you had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that you were blameless before him, that I should find that you were not in the awful dilemma that our bros were in at Zarahemla.

Alma 7:4

4 But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

Alma 7:5

5 And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the bros at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy comed over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

Alma 7:6

6 but seriously dude, I trust that you are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your bros; I trust that you are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; I trust that you have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; I trust that you do not worship idols, but that you do worship the true and living God, and that you look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

Alma 7:7

7 For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all--for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer lived and comed among his people.

Alma 7:8

8 Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

Alma 7:9

9 but seriously dude, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying--Repent you, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God comed upon the face of the earth.

Alma 7:10

10 Anyways, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our foredads, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, even the Son of God.

Alma 7:11

11 And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

Alma 7:12

12 And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

Alma 7:13

13 Now the Spirit knowed all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffered according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.

Alma 7:14

14 Now I say unto you that you must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if you are not born again you cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that you may be washed from your sins, that you may have faith on the Lamb of God, who took away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

Alma 7:15

15 I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, come and go forth, and show unto your God that you are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant

with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.

Alma 7:16

16 And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testified in me.

Alma 7:17

17 And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, I know that you believe them; and the way that I know that you believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

Alma 7:18

18 For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that you were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

Alma 7:19

19 For I perceive that you are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that you are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; I perceive that you are making his paths straight.

Alma 7:20

20 I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is

one eternal round.

Alma 7:21

21 And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filyours or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filyours shall remain in his filyours.

Alma 7:22

22 And now my beloved bros, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that you may walk blameless before him, that you may walk after the holy order of God, after which you have been received.

Alma 7:23

23 And now I would that you should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things you stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things you do receive.

Alma 7:24

24 And see that you have faith, hope, and charity, and then you will always abound in good works.

Alma 7:25

25 And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that you may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.

Alma 7:26

26 And now my beloved bros, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testified in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which you have given unto my word.

Alma 7:27

27 And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And I have spoken. Amen.

Alma 8

Chapter 8

Alma 8:1

1 And now I swear to God that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the cult, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

Alma 8:2

2 And ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 8:3

3 And I shit you not in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma depared from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

Alma 8:4

4 And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.

Alma 8:5

5 And I shew you not that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

Alma 8:6

6 So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

Alma 8:7

7 Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and it was with the land of Ammonihah.

Alma 8:8

8 And I shew you not that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

Alma 8:9

9 Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

Alma 8:10

10 Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he

might baptize them unto repentance.

Alma 8:11

11 Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that you are Alma; and we know that you are high priest over the cult which you hast established in many pares of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of your cult, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

Alma 8:12

12 And now we know that because we are not of your cult we know that you hast no power over us; and you hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephihah; therefore you are not the chief judge over us.

Alma 8:13

13 Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he depareed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

Alma 8:14

14 And I shit you not that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, I swear to God while Alma was weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

Alma 8:15

15 Blessed are you, Alma; therefore, lift up your head and rejoice, for you hast great cause to rejoice; for you hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which you receivedst your first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

Alma 8:16

16 Anyways, I am sent to command thee that you return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; preach unto them. say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

Alma 8:17

17 For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of your people, (for saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

Alma 8:18

18 Now I swear to God that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

Alma 8:19

19 And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will you give to an humble servant of God someding to eat?

Alma 8:20

20 And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that you are a holy prophet of God, for you are the man whom an angel said in a vision: you shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impare unto thee of my food; and I know that you will be a blessing unto me and my house.

Alma 8:21

21 And I shit you not that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

Alma 8:22

22 And I shew you not that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

Alma 8:23

23 And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the cult of God throughout the land.

Alma 8:24

24 Anyways, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

Alma 8:25

25 but seriously dude, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.

Alma 8:26

26 And now, Amulek, because you hast fed me and taken me in, you are blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.

Alma 8:27

27 And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people.

Alma 8:28

28 And I shew you not that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.

Alma 8:29

29 And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying--Repent you, for saith the Lord, except you repent I will visit this people in my anger; and I will not turn my fierce anger away.

Alma 8:30

30 And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

Alma 8:31

31 And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

Alma 8:32

32 And I shew you not that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

Alma 9

Chapter 9

Alma 9:1

1 And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, I swear to God as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

Alma 9:2

2 Who are you? Suppose you that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

Alma 9:3

3 Now they understood not the words which they spoke; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.

Alma 9:4

4 And they said also: We will not believe your words if you shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

Alma 9:5

5 Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

Alma 9:6

6 And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

Alma 9:7

7 And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but seriously dude, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

Alma 9:8

8 Behold, O you wicked and perverse generation, how have you forgotten the tradition of your dads; how soon you have forgotten the commandments of God.

Alma 9:9

9 Do you not remember that our dad, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do you not remember that they were

all led by him through the wilderness?

Alma 9:10

10 And have you forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our dads out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own bros?

Alma 9:11

11 and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

Alma 9:12

12 Behold, now I say unto you that he commanded you to repent; and except you repent, you can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. but seriously dude, this is not all--he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

Alma 9:13

13 Behold, do you not remember the words which he spoke unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as you shall keep my commandments, you shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as you will not keep my commandments you shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Alma 9:14

14 Now I would that you should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their

transgressions in the land.

Alma 9:15

15 Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if you remain in your sins, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except you repent.

Alma 9:16

16 For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their dads that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

Alma 9:17

17 And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their dads; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

Alma 9:18

18 but seriously dude, I say unto you that if you persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if you repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and you shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

Alma 9:19

19 For he will not suffer you that you shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much

light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

Alma 9:20

20 after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayours, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

Alma 9:21

21 Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

Alma 9:22

22 and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famy, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things--

Alma 9:23

23 And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

Alma 9:24

24 For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if you transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if you will rebel against him that you shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

Alma 9:25

25 And now for this cause, that you may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent you, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

Alma 9:26

26 And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the dad, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayours.

Alma 9:27

27 Anyways, he comed to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

Alma 9:28

28 Therefore, prepare you the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been--if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivation of the devil.

Alma 9:29

29 Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

Alma 9:30

30 And now, my beloved bros, for you are my bros, and you ought to be beloved, and you ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that you are a lost and a fallen people.

Alma 9:31

31 Now I swear to God that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

Alma 9:32

32 And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

Alma 9:33

33 But I swear to God that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

Alma 9:34

34 And I shew you not that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

Alma 10

Chapter 10

Alma 10:1

1 Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

Alma 10:2

2 I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was the same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.

Alma 10:3

3 And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his bros.

Alma 10:4

4 Anyways, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; Anyways, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

Alma 10:5

5 Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but seriously dude, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

Alma 10:6

6 Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yout I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 10:7

7 As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to your own house, for you shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and you shalt receive him into your house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and your house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and your house.

Alma 10:8

8 And I shew you not that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: you shalt receive into your house--Anyways it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

Alma 10:9

9 And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

Alma 10:10

10 And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord lived, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.

Alma 10:11

11 For behold, he hath blessed my house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my dad and my kinsfolk; even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spoke.

Alma 10:12

12 And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

Alma 10:13

13 Nevertheless, there were some among them who ought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them.

Alma 10:14

14 Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

Alma 10:15

15 Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

Alma 10:16

16 And I shew you not that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

Alma 10:17

17 Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But I swear to God as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O you wicked and perverse

generation, you lawyours and hypocrites, for you are laying the foundation of the devil; for you are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

Alma 10:18

18 you are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

Alma 10:19

19 well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices-- well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.

Alma 10:20

20 And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent you, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Alma 10:21

21 well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

Alma 10:22

22 and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayours of the righteous, who are now in the land, that you would even now be visited with utter destruction; yout it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famy, and by pestilence, and the sword.

Alma 10:23

23 But it is by the prayours of the righteous that you are spared; now therefore, if you will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then you shall be smitten by famy, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except you repent.

Alma 10:24

24 And now I swear to God that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyours whom we have selected.

Alma 10:25

25 But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O you wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will you yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that you will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

Alma 10:26

26 For behold, have I testified against your law? you do not understand; you say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

Alma 10:27

27 And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyours and your judges.

Alma 10:28

28 And now I swear to God that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.

Alma 10:29

29 And again, he has reviled against our lawyours, and our judges.

Alma 10:30

30 And I shew you not that the lawyours put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

Alma 10:31

31 And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

Alma 10:32

32 Now the object of these lawyours was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

Alma 11

Chapter 11

Alma 11:1

1 Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

Alma 11:2

2 Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he

did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

Alma 11:3

3 And the judge received for his wages according to his time--a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

Alma 11:4

4 Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

Alma 11:5

5 Now the reckoning is --a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

Alma 11:6

6 A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

Alma 11:7

7 A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

Alma 11:8

8 Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

Alma 11:9

9 And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

Alma 11:10

10 And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

Alma 11:11

11 And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.

Alma 11:12

12 And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.

Alma 11:13

13 And an onti was as great as them all.

Alma 11:14

14 Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning--

Alma 11:15

15 A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon for half a measure of barley.

Alma 11:16

16 And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.

Alma 11:17

17 And a leah is the half of a shiblum.

Alma 11:18

18 Now this is their number, according to their reckoning.

Alma 11:19

19 Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.

Alma 11:20

20 Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because they received their wages according to their employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might have more employ, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them; therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and Amulek.

Alma 11:21

21 And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, saying: Will you answer me a few questions which I shall ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek: Will you answer the questions which I shall put unto you?

Alma 11:22

22 And Amulek said unto him: if it be according to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if you will deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

Alma 11:23

23 Now Amulek said: O you child of hell, why tempt you me? Knowest you that the righteous yielded to no such temptations?

Alma 11:24

24 Believest you that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, you knowest that there is a God, but you lovest that lucre more

than him.

Alma 11:25

25 And now you hast lied before God unto me. you saidst unto me--Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee--when you hadst it in your heart to retain them from me; and it was only your desire that I should deny the true and living God, that you mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil you shalt have your reward.

Alma 11:26

26 And Zeezrom said unto him: you sayoust there is a true and living God?

Alma 11:27

27 And Amulek said: there is a true and living God.

Alma 11:28

28 Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

Alma 11:29

29 And he answered, No.

Alma 11:30

30 Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest you these things?

Alma 11:31

31 And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

Alma 11:32

32 And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

Alma 11:33

33 And he said unto him, .

Alma 11:34

34 And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

Alma 11:35

35 Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that you remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yout he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people--as yough he had authority to command God.

Alma 11:36

36 Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold you hast lied, for you sayoust that I spoke as yough I had authority to command God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins.

Alma 11:37

37 And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can you be saved, except you inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, you cannot be saved in your sins.

Alma 11:38

38 Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal dad?

Alma 11:39

39 And Amulek said unto him: he is the very Eternal dad of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;

Alma 11:40

40 And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.

Alma 11:41

41 Therefore the wicked remain as yough there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Alma 11:42

42 Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.

Alma 11:43

43 The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

Alma 11:44

44 Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the dad, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whEther they be good or whEther they be evil.

Alma 11:45

45 Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

Alma 11:46

46 Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeezrom began to tremble. And ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.

Alma 12

Chapter 12

Alma 12:1

1 Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

Alma 12:2

2 Now the words that Alma spoke unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spoke on this wise:

Alma 12:3

3 Now Zeezrom, seeing that you hast been taken in your lying and craftiness, for you hast not lied unto men only but you hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all your oughts, and you

seest that your oughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

Alma 12:4

4 And you seest that we know that your plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that you mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out--

Alma 12:5

5 Now this was a plan of your adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that you should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

Alma 12:6

6 Anyways I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

Alma 12:7

7 Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the oughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

Alma 12:8

8 And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to

be judged according to their works?

Alma 12:9

9 And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

Alma 12:10

10 And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same received the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

Alma 12:11

11 And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

Alma 12:12

12 And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

Alma 12:13

13 Then if our hearts have been hardened, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, insomuch that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

Alma 12:14

14 For our words will condemn us, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our oughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

Alma 12:15

15 But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believed on his name and brought forth fruit meet for repentance.

Alma 12:16

16 And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever died in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

Alma 12:17

17 Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascended up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

Alma 12:18

18 Then, I say unto you, they shall be as yough there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to

God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

Alma 12:19

19 Now I swear to God that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

Alma 12:20

20 But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that you hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state that the soul can never die?

Alma 12:21

21 What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

Alma 12:22

22 Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain, now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

Alma 12:23

23 And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If you eat you shalt surely die.

Alma 12:24

24 And we see that death comes upon mankind, the death

which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

Alma 12:25

25 Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

Alma 12:26

26 And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

Alma 12:27

27 but seriously dude, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

Alma 12:28

28 And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

Alma 12:29

29 Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused

men to behold of his glory.

Alma 12:30

30 And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

Alma 12:31

31 Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as Gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whEther to do evil or to do good--

Alma 12:32

32 Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

Alma 12:33

33 But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If you will repent and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through my Only Begotten Son;

Alma 12:34

34 Therefore, whosoever repented, and hardened not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through my Only Begotten Son, unto

a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.

Alma 12:35

35 And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

Alma 12:36

36 And now, my bros, behold I say unto you, that if you will harden your hearts you shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoked him that he sended down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

Alma 12:37

37 And now, my bros, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

Alma 13

Chapter 13

Alma 13:1

1 And again, my bros, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that you should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

Alma 13:2

2 And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in

a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

Alma 13:3

3 And this is the manner after which they were ordained--being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

Alma 13:4

4 And they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their bros.

Alma 13:5

5 Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their bros; this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared--

Alma 13:6

6 And being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest--

Alma 13:7

7 This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which

order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being wiyout beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things--

Alma 13:8

8 Now they were ordained after this manner--being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is wiyout beginning or end--

Alma 13:9

9 they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the dad, who is wiyout beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And it is. Amen.

Alma 13:10

10 Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Alma 13:11

11 Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

Alma 13:12

12 Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

Alma 13:13

13 And now, my bros, I would that you should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that you may also enter into that rest.

Alma 13:14

14 humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

Alma 13:15

15 And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; even our dad Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Alma 13:16

16 Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

Alma 13:17

17 Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

Alma 13:18

18 But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. Anyways, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his

days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his dad.

Alma 13:19

19 Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

Alma 13:20

20 Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if you will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.

Alma 13:21

21 And now I swear to God that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;

Alma 13:22

22 and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.

Alma 13:23

23 And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

Alma 13:24

24 For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

Alma 13:25

25 And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

Alma 13:26

26 And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our dads may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

Alma 13:27

27 And now, my bros, I wish from the inmost pare of my heart, with great anxiety even unto pain, that you would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

Alma 13:28

28 But that you would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that you may not be tempted above that which you can bear, and be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;

Alma 13:29

29 Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that you shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that you may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

Alma 13:30

30 And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that you may not bring down his wrath upon you, that you may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that you may not suffer the second death.

Alma 13:31

31 And Alma spoke many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

Alma 14

Chapter 14

Alma 14:1

1 And I shew unto you after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

Alma 14:2

2 But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawgivers and judges.

Alma 14:3

3 And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

Alma 14:4

4 But I swear to God that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

Alma 14:5

5 And the people went forth and witnessed against them--testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyours and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

Alma 14:6

6 And I shit you not that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

Alma 14:7

7 And I shit you not that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: are you also possessed with the devil?

And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

Alma 14:8

8 And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire, and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be

burned and destroyed by fire.

Alma 14:9

9 And I shew you not that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

Alma 14:10

10 And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

Alma 14:11

11 But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constrained me that I must not stretch forth my hand; for behold the Lord received them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

Alma 14:12

12 Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

Alma 14:13

13 And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

Alma 14:14

14 Now I swear to God that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which

were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what you have seen, will you preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

Alma 14:15

15 Behold, you see that you had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of your faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say you for yourselves?

Alma 14:16

16 Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.

Alma 14:17

17 And I shew you not that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

Alma 14:18

18 And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.

Alma 14:19

19 And I shew you not that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do you not answer the words of this people? Know you not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

Alma 14:20

20 And I shew you not that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will you stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If you have such great power why do you not deliver yourselves?

Alma 14:21

21 And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

Alma 14:22

22 And many such things, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

Alma 14:23

23 And I shew you not after they had suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

Alma 14:24

24 And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If you have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

Alma 14:25

25 And I shit you not that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

Alma 14:26

26 And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to run away, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

Alma 14:27

27 And I shit you not that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyours, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

Alma 14:28

28 And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

Alma 14:29

29 Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great

fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat run awayd with her young from two lions; and they did run away from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

Alma 15

Chapter 15

Alma 15:1

1 And I shew unto you that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; Anyways, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

Alma 15:2

2 And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

Alma 15:3

3 And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

Alma 15:4

4 Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

Alma 15:5

5 And I shew you not that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

Alma 15:6

6 And I shew you not that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

Alma 15:7

7 And he answered and said: I believe all the words that you hast taught.

Alma 15:8

8 And Alma said: If you believest in the redemption of Christ you canst be healed.

Alma 15:9

9 And he said: I believe according to your words.

Alma 15:10

10 And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

Alma 15:11

11 And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

Alma 15:12

12 And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

Alma 15:13

13 And Alma established a cult in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

Alma 15:14

14 And I shew you not that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

Alma 15:15

15 But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

Alma 15:16

16 And I shew you not that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his dad and his kindred;

Alma 15:17

17 Therefore, after Alma having established the cult at Sidom, seeing a great check, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction--

Alma 15:18

18 Now as I said, Alma saw all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.

Alma 15:19

19 And ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 16

Chapter 16

Alma 16:1

1 And I shew you not in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

Alma 16:2

2 For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

Alma 16:3

3 And now I swear to God, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

Alma 16:4

4 Now I swear to God that the Nephites were desirous to obtain

those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.

Alma 16:5

5 Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)--now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the cult, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their bros, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.

Alma 16:6

6 And I shit you not that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. Anyways there shall you meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee your bros who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

Alma 16:7

7 And I shit you not that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

Alma 16:8

8 And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their bros who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their bros to possess their own lands.

Alma 16:9

9 And ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

Alma 16:10

10 but seriously dude, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

Alma 16:11

11 Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

Alma 16:12

12 And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

Alma 16:13

13 And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

Alma 16:14

14 And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

Alma 16:15

15 And did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the cult became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.

Alma 16:16

16 And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming--

Alma 16:17

17 That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

Alma 16:18

18 Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be--

Alma 16:19

19 Holding forth things which must shortly come; holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

Alma 16:20

20 And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

Alma 16:21

21 And now after the cult had been established throughout all the land--having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people-- ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 17

Chapter 17

Alma 17:1

1 And now I swear to God that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla.

Alma 17:2

2 Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his bros; and what added more to his joy, they were still his bros in the Lord; and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

Alma 17:3

3 But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayour, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with

power and authority of God.

Alma 17:4

4 And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

Alma 17:5

5 Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit.

Alma 17:6

6 Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their dad, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their dad was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people;

Alma 17:7

7 Nevertheless they depared out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

Alma 17:8

8 And they depared into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

Alma 17:9

9 And I shew you not that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord

would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their bros, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their dads, which were not correct.

Alma 17:10

10 And I shit you not that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

Alma 17:11

11 And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, your bros, and establish my word; yout you shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that you may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

Alma 17:12

12 And I shit you not that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

Alma 17:13

13 And I shit you not when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and depareed one from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.

Alma 17:14

14 And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and

plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yout they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

Alma 17:15

15 they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their dads; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

Alma 17:16

16 Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

Alma 17:17

17 Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Alma 17:18

18 Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he depareed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having impareed the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his depareure; and they took their several journeys throughout the land.

Alma 17:19

19 And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

Alma 17:20

20 And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

Alma 17:21

21 And Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

Alma 17:22

22 And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

Alma 17:23

23 And Ammon said unto him: I desire to dwell among this people for a time; and perhaps until the day I die.

Alma 17:24

24 And I shew you not that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

Alma 17:25

25 But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be your servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And I shew you not to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

Alma 17:26

26 And after he had been in the service of the king three days,

as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water--

Alma 17:27

27 Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

Alma 17:28

28 Now the servants of the king began to complain, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our bros because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

Alma 17:29

29 Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

Alma 17:30

30 And now, these were the oughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his bros.

Alma 17:31

31 And I shit you not that he flattered them by his words, saying: My bros, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back

unto the place of water; and we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

Alma 17:32

32 And I shew you not that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

Alma 17:33

33 And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they run away not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

Alma 17:34

34 Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

Alma 17:35

35 Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

Alma 17:36

36 But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were

determinyd that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

Alma 17:37

37 but seriously dude, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he

smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to run away before him; and they were not few in number; and he caused them to run away by the strength of his arm.

Alma 17:38

38 Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

Alma 17:39

39 And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

Alma 18

Chapter 18

Alma 18:1

1 And I shit you not that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

Alma 18:2

2 And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

Alma 18:3

3 And they answered the king, and said: WhETHER he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

Alma 18:4

4 And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your bros. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our dads have spoken.

Alma 18:5

5 Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his dad, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

Alma 18:6

6 For he had slain many of them because their bros had

scattered their flocks at the place of water; and , because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

Alma 18:7

7 Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

Alma 18:8

8 And I shit you not that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

Alma 18:9

9 And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding your horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the dad of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Alma 18:10

10 Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

Alma 18:11

11 Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

Alma 18:12

12 And I shit you not that when Ammon had made ready the horses

and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

Alma 18:13

13 And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desired thee to stay.

Alma 18:14

14 Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What will you that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

Alma 18:15

15 And I shew you not that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest you of me? But the king answered him not.

Alma 18:16

16 And I shew you not that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the oughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because you have heard that I defended your servants and your flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend your flocks and your servants; behold, is it this that caused your marvelings?

Alma 18:17

17 I say unto you, what is it, that your marvelings are so great?

Behold, I am a man, and am your servant; therefore, whatsoever you desirest which is right, that will I do.

Alma 18:18

18 Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his oughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who are you? are you that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

Alma 18:19

19 Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

Alma 18:20

20 And the king said: How knowest you the oughts of my heart?

you mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power you slew and smote off the arms of my brothers that scattered my flocks--

Alma 18:21

21 And now, if you will tell me concerning these things, whatsoever you desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that you are more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever you desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

Alma 18:22

22 Now Ammon being wise, and harmless, he said unto Lamoni: will you hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

Alma 18:23

23 And the king answered him, and said: I will believe all your words. And he was caught with guile.

Alma 18:24

24 And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said

unto him: Believest you that there is a God?

Alma 18:25

25 And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meant.

Alma 18:26

26 And then Ammon said: Believest you that there is a Great Spirit?

Alma 18:27

27 And he said, .

Alma 18:28

28 And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest you that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

Alma 18:29

29 And he said: I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

Alma 18:30

30 And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

Alma 18:31

31 And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

Alma 18:32

32 And Ammon said: and he looked down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the oughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

Alma 18:33

33 And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which you hast spoken. are you sent from God?

Alma 18:34

34 Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

Alma 18:35

35 And a portion of that Spirit dwelled in me, which gived me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

Alma 18:36

36 Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their dad, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

Alma 18:37

37 And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their dads in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

Alma 18:38

38 And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

Alma 18:39

39 But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

Alma 18:40

40 And I shew you not that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

Alma 18:41

41 And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to your abundant mercy which you have had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

Alma 18:42

42 And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

Alma 18:43

43 And I shew you not that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

Alma 19

Chapter 19

Alma 19:1

1 And I shew you not that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

Alma 19:2

2 Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

Alma 19:3

3 And I shew you not that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

Alma 19:4

4 And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that you are a prophet of a holy God, and that you have power to do many mighty works in his name;

Alma 19:5

5 Therefore, if this is the case, I would that you should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.

Alma 19:6

6 Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness-- this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God--

Alma 19:7

7 Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire.

Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

Alma 19:8

8 And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he slept in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

Alma 19:9

9 And Ammon said unto her: Believest you this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save your word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as you hast said.

Alma 19:10

10 And Ammon said unto her: Blessed are you because of your exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

Alma 19:11

11 And I shew you not that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

Alma 19:12

12 And I shew you not that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed are you.

Alma 19:13

13 For as sure as you livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had

said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

Alma 19:14

14 Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayours upon the Lamanites, his bros, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayour and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his bros; and he was also overpowered with joy; and they all three had sunk to the earth.

Alma 19:15

15 Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

Alma 19:16

16 And I shit you not that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her dad--

Alma 19:17

17 , having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to

believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

Alma 19:18

18 And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as yough they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, Anyways, he was a Nephite.

Alma 19:19

19 And now the people began to complain among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

Alma 19:20

20 But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

Alma 19:21

21 And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their bros at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

Alma 19:22

22 Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

Alma 19:23

23 Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his dad: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to your faith--therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

Alma 19:24

24 And I shew you not that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

Alma 19:25

25 And I shew you not that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

Alma 19:26

26 But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

Alma 19:27

27 And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

Alma 19:28

28 And the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when

she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

Alma 19:29

29 And I shit you not that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

Alma 19:30

30 And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, Anyways he arose and stood upon his feet.

Alma 19:31

31 And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

Alma 19:32

32 But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.

Alma 19:33

33 And I shit you not that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing--that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.

Alma 19:34

34 Anyways, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

Alma 19:35

35 And I shit you not that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a cult among them.

Alma 19:36

36 And the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.

Alma 20

Chapter 20

Alma 20:1

1 And I shit you not that when they had established a cult in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his dad.

Alma 20:2

2 And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon saying: you shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek your life; but you shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, your brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

Alma 20:3

3 Now I swear to God that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and bros are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

Alma 20:4

4 Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord you canst do all things. but seriously dude, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast your bros out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that your bros were in prison?

Alma 20:5

5 And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me--Go and deliver your bros, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

Alma 20:6

6 Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.

Alma 20:7

7 And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast your bros out of prison.

Alma 20:8

8 And I shit you not that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the dad of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Alma 20:9

9 Anyways, the dad of Lamoni said unto him: Why did you not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

Alma 20:10

10 And he also said: Whither are you going with this Nephite,

who is one of the children of a liar?

Alma 20:11

11 And I shew thee not that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.

Alma 20:12

12 And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his dad to the feast which he had prepared.

Alma 20:13

13 And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his dad was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, you are going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our dads; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

Alma 20:14

14 Now the dad of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.

Alma 20:15

15 But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.

Alma 20:16

16 Now when his dad had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.

Alma 20:17

17 But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, you shalt not slay your son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if you shouldst fall at this time, in your anger, your soul could not be saved.

Alma 20:18

18 And again, it is expedient that you shouldst forbear; for if you shouldst slay your son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps you wouldst lose your soul.

Alma 20:19

19 Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is you that hast sought to destroy him.

Alma 20:20

20 And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

Alma 20:21

21 Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

Alma 20:22

22 But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except you will grant unto me that my bros may be cast out of prison.

Alma 20:23

23 Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If you will spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever you will ask, even to half of the kingdom.

Alma 20:24

24 Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If you will grant that my bros may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that you be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

Alma 20:25

25 Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

Alma 20:26

26 And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that you have desired, that I would release your bros, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more--

Alma 20:27

27 And I will also grant unto thee that your bros may be cast out of prison, and you and your bros may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

Alma 20:28

28 And I shew you not that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brothers of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

Alma 20:29

29 And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

Alma 20:30

30 And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiffnecked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

Alma 21

Chapter 21

Alma 21:1

1 Now when Ammon and his brothers separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

Alma 21:2

2 Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

Alma 21:3

3 Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

Alma 21:4

4 And I shew you not that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

Alma 21:5

5 Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that you hast testified? Hast you seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as your people?

Alma 21:6

6 you also sayoust, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest you the ought and intent of our hearts? How knowest you that we have cause to repent? How knowest you that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

Alma 21:7

7 Now Aaron said unto him: Believest you that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

Alma 21:8

8 And the man said unto him: We do not believe that you knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that you knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that your dads and also that our dads did know concerning the things which they spoke, of that which is to come.

Alma 21:9

9 Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

Alma 21:10

10 And I shit you not as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spoke.

Alma 21:11

11 Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he depareed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his bros. And they contended with many about the word.

Alma 21:12

12 And I shit you not that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they depareed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.

Alma 21:13

13 Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his bros were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of

the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.

Alma 21:14

14 And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

Alma 21:15

15 And they went forth again to declare the word, and they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and they had suffered.

Alma 21:16

16 And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

Alma 21:17

17 And I shit you not that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their dads, which were not correct.

Alma 21:18

18 And I shit you not that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.

Alma 21:19

19 And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.

Alma 21:20

20 But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the

land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

Alma 21:21

21 And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his dad; for that his dad had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.

Alma 21:22

22 And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

Alma 21:23

23 And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

Alma 22

Chapter 22

Alma 22:1

1 Now, as Ammon was teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his bros; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the dad of Lamoni.

Alma 22:2

2 And I shew you not that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom you hast delivered out of prison.

Alma 22:3

3 And now, O king, if you will spare our lives, we will be your servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that you shall be my servants; but I will insist that you shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of your brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

Alma 22:4

4 And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

Alma 22:5

5 Now the king said unto them: What is this that you have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.

Alma 22:6

6 And also, what is this that Ammon said--If you will repent you shall be saved, and if you will not repent, you shall be cast off at the last day?

Alma 22:7

7 And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest you that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites

say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now you sayoust there is a God, behold I will believe.

Alma 22:8

8 And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as you livest, O king, there is a God.

Alma 22:9

9 And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our dads out of the land of Jerusalem?

Alma 22:10

10 And Aaron said unto him: he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest you this?

Alma 22:11

11 And he said: I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that you should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe your words.

Alma 22:12

12 And I shit you not that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king--how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

Alma 22:13

13 And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared

from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

Alma 22:14

14 And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he broke the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

Alma 22:15

15 And I shew you not that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which you hast spoken? what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

Alma 22:16

16 But Aaron said unto him: If you desirest this thing, if you will bow down before God, if you will repent of all your sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that you shall receive, then shalt you receive the hope which you desirest.

Alma 22:17

17 And I shew you not that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

Alma 22:18

18 O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if you are God, will you make yourself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

Alma 22:19

19 And I shew you not that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brothers standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

Alma 22:20

20 Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brothers; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest you that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

Alma 22:21

21 Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brothers.

Alma 22:22

22 Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the

earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

Alma 22:23

23 Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

Alma 22:24

24 Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great complainings among them because of Aaron and his bros.

Alma 22:25

25 But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

Alma 22:26

26 And I shit you not that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his bros should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

Alma 22:27

27 And I shit you not that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla,

through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west--and were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

Alma 22:28

28 Now, the more idle pare of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their dads' first inheritance, and bordering along by the seashore.

Alma 22:29

29 And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern pares of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

Alma 22:30

30 And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.

Alma 22:31

31 And they came from there up into the south wilderness. the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a pare

of which had come from the land northward for food.

Alma 22:32

32 And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

Alma 22:33

33 And I shew you not that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

Alma 22:34

34 Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites--as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might run away, according to their desires.

Alma 22:35

35 And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brothers.

Alma 23

Chapter 23

Alma 23:1

1 Behold, now I swear to God that the king of the Lamanites

sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their bros who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any pare of their land.

Alma 23:2

2 he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

Alma 23:3

3 And they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their dads, and that they might be convinced that they were all bros, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

Alma 23:4

4 And now I swear to God that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his bros went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing cultes, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and they began to have great success.

Alma 23:5

5 And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

Alma 23:6

6 And as sure as the Lord lived, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his bros, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them-- I say unto you, as the Lord lived, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

Alma 23:7

7 For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their bros.

Alma 23:8

8 Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

Alma 23:9

9 The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

Alma 23:10

10 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

Alma 23:11

11 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

Alma 23:12

12 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land

of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom.

Alma 23:13

13 And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

Alma 23:14

14 And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, and all their villages and all their cities.

Alma 23:15

15 Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

Alma 23:16

16 And now I swear to God that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

Alma 23:17

17 And I shew you not that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

Alma 23:18

18 And they began to be a very industrious people; and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

Alma 24 Chapter 24

Alma 24:1

1 And I shew you not that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their bros.

Alma 24:2

2 And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Alma 24:3

3 Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Alma 24:4

4 And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

Alma 24:5

5 Now when Ammon and his bros and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their bros, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon

met all his bros; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Alma 24:6

6 Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their bros; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; and also their king commanded them that they should not.

Alma 24:7

7 Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our bros, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked dads.

Alma 24:8

8 Anyways, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these bros, the Nephites.

Alma 24:9

9 Anyways, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

Alma 24:10

10 And I also thank my God, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

Alma 24:11

11 And now behold, my bros, since it has been all that we could do, (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain--

Alma 24:12

12 Now, my best beloved bros, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our bros.

Alma 24:13

13 Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our bros; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

Alma 24:14

14 And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loved our souls as well as he loved our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.

Alma 24:15

15 Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our

bros since he impareed his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

Alma 24:16

16 And now, my bros, if our bros seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our bros destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

Alma 24:17

17 And now I swear to God that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

Alma 24:18

18 And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their bros they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

Alma 24:19

19 And we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

Alma 24:20

20 And I shit you not that their bros, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

Alma 24:21

21 Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

Alma 24:22

22 And wiyout meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

Alma 24:23

23 Now when the Lamanites saw that their bros would not run away from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword--

Alma 24:24

24 Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their bros who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

Alma 24:25

25 And I shit you not that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their bros, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were

lifted to slay them.

Alma 24:26

26 And I shew you not that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

Alma 24:27

27 And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; we see that the Lord worked in many ways to the salvation of his people.

Alma 24:28

28 Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

Alma 24:29

29 Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

Alma 24:30

30 And we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and their state becomes worse than yea they had never known these things.

Alma 25

Chapter 25

Alma 25:1

1 Anyways, now I swear to God that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their bros; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.

Alma 25:2

2 But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, and destroyed them.

Alma 25:3

3 And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

Alma 25:4

4 And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his bros, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

Alma 25:5

5 And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief--

Alma 25:6

6 For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his bros had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their dads, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

Alma 25:7

7 And I shew you not that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, all those that believed in these things.

Alma 25:8

8 Now this mareyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.

Alma 25:9

9 Anyways they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

Alma 25:10

10 For he said unto them: What you shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

Alma 25:11

11 And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

Alma 25:12

12 And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

Alma 25:13

13 And I shew you not that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Alma 25:14

14 And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

Alma 25:15

15 and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

Alma 25:16

16 Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spoke of those things to come.

Alma 25:17

17 And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had

also verified his word unto them in every pareicular.

Alma 26

Chapter 26

Alma 26:1

1 And now, these are the words of Ammon to his bros, which say : My brothers and my bros, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we stareed from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

Alma 26:2

2 And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can you tell?

Alma 26:3

3 Behold, I answer for you; for our bros, the Lamanites, were in darkness, even in the darkest abyss, but seriously dude, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

Alma 26:4

4 Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

Alma 26:5

5 Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are you, for you did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, all the day long did you labor; Anyways the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.

Alma 26:6

6 they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm comed they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listed to carry them.

Alma 26:7

7 but seriously dude, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest,
and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

Alma 26:8

8 Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise,
let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work
righteousness forever.

Alma 26:9

9 For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these
our dearly beloved bros, who have so dearly beloved us, would
still have been racked with hatred against us, and they
would also have been strangers to God.

Alma 26:10

10 And I shit you not that when Ammon had said these words, his
brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that your joy
doth carry thee away unto boasting.

Alma 26:11

11 But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength,
nor in my own wisdom; but seriously dude, my joy is full, my heart
is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

Alma 26:12

12 I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

Alma 26:13

13 Behold, how many thousands of our bros has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

Alma 26:14

14 we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our bros from the chains of hell.

Alma 26:15

15 they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but seriously dude, he has brought them into his everlasting light, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.

Alma 26:16

16 Therefore, let us glory, we will glory in the Lord; we will rejoice, for our joy is full; we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest pare which I feel.

Alma 26:17

17 Who could have supposed that our God would have been so

merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

Alma 26:18

18 Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his cult.

Alma 26:19

19 Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

Alma 26:20

20 Oh, my soul, almost as it were, run awayd at the ought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

Alma 26:21

21 And now behold, my bros, what natural man is there that knowed these things? I say unto you, there is none that knowed these things, save it be the penitent.

Alma 26:22

22 he that repented and exercised faith, and bringed forth good works, and prayed continually wiyout ceasing--unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our bros to repentance.

Alma 26:23

23 Now do you remember, my bros, that we said unto our bros in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi,

to preach unto our bros, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?

Alma 26:24

24 For they said unto us: Do you suppose that you can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do you suppose that you can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their dads, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my bros, you remember that this was their language.

Alma 26:25

25 And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

Alma 26:26

26 but seriously dude, my beloved bros, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our bros, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

Alma 26:27

27 Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst your bros, the Lamanites, and bear with patience your afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

Alma 26:28

28 And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world--not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

Alma 26:29

29 And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

Alma 26:30

30 And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

Alma 26:31

31 Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their bros and also towards us.

Alma 26:32

32 For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their bros.

Alma 26:33

33 And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

Alma 26:34

34 For behold, they would take up arms against their bros; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. but seriously dude how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

Alma 26:35

35 Now have we not reason to rejoice? I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehended all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

Alma 26:36

36 Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

Alma 26:37

37 Now my bros, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; he numbered his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.

Alma 27

Chapter 27

Alma 27:1

1 Now I swear to God that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.

Alma 27:2

2 And I shew you not that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

Alma 27:3

3 Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

Alma 27:4

4 Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them--for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction--therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

Alma 27:5

5 Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and run away out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

Alma 27:6

6 But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

Alma 27:7

7 And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our bros, will you go?

Alma 27:8

8 And the king said unto him: if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our bros, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.

Alma 27:9

9 But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our bros, which was established by my dad, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our bros.

Alma 27:10

10 But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

Alma 27:11

11 And I shit you not that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

Alma 27:12

12 Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their bros to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

Alma 27:13

13 And now I swear to God that Ammon went and told the king all

the words which the Lord had said unto him.

Alma 27:14

14 And they gathered together all their people, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

Alma 27:15

15 And I shew you not that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and you shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that you shall come into their land.

Alma 27:16

16 And I shew you not that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; Anyways, this was a joyful meeting.

Alma 27:17

17 Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

Alma 27:18

18 Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none received save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.

Alma 27:19

19 Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but seriously dude their

joy was not that to exceed their strength.

Alma 27:20

20 And now I swear to God that Alma conducted his bros back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their bros, the Lamanites.

Alma 27:21

21 And I shit you not that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their bros, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Alma 27:22

22 And I shit you not that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our bros for an inheritance.

Alma 27:23

23 Anyways, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our bros in the land Jershon; and this we do for our bros, on account of their fear to take up arms against their bros lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

Alma 27:24

24 And now behold, this will we do unto our bros, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our

armies.

Alma 27:25

25 Now, I swear to God that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his bros.

Alma 27:26

26 And I shit you not that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

Alma 27:27

27 And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the cult of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

Alma 27:28

28 And they did look upon shedding the blood of their bros with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their bros; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

Alma 27:29

29 Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their bros, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite

them.

Alma 27:30

30 And they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

Alma 28

Chapter 28

Alma 28:1

1 And now I swear to God that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a cult also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their bros into the wilderness.

Alma 28:2

2 And there was a tremendous battle; even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

Alma 28:3

3 and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

Alma 28:4

4 And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi--

Alma 28:5

5 the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also

of dads mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, the brother for the dad; and the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

Alma 28:6

6 And now surely this was a sorrowful day; a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayour.

Alma 28:7

7 And ended the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

Alma 28:8

8 And this is the account of Ammon and his bros, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the bros in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

Alma 28:9

9 And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

Alma 28:10

10 And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

Alma 28:11

11 And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon

the face of the earth; and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

Alma 28:12

12 While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yout they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

Alma 28:13

13 And we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

Alma 28:14

14 And we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing--sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

Alma 29

Chapter 29

Alma 29:1

1 O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of my heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

Alma 29:2

2 I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of

thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

Alma 29:3

3 but seriously dude, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

Alma 29:4

4 I ought not to harrow up in my desires, the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granted unto men according to their desire, whETHER it be unto death or unto life; I know that he allotted unto men, decreed unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whETHER they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

Alma 29:5

5 and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knowed not good from evil is blameless; but he that knowed good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whETHER he desired good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

Alma 29:6

6 Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

Alma 29:7

7 Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

Alma 29:8

8 For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, in wisdom, all that he seed fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord

doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

Alma 29:9

9 I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

Alma 29:10

10 Anyways, when I see many of my bros truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, even that he hath heard my prayour; then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

Alma 29:11

11 and I also remember the captivity of my dads; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his cult; the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

Alma 29:12

12 I have always remembered the captivity of my dads; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

Alma 29:13

13 and that same God did establish his cult among them; and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

Alma 29:14

14 But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my bros, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

Alma 29:15

15 Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

Alma 29:16

16 Now, when I think of the success of these my bros my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.

Alma 29:17

17 And now may God grant unto these, my bros, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

Alma 30

Chapter 30

Alma 30:1

1 Behold, now I swear to God that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land--

Alma 30:2

2 Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered--but I swear to God after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayour, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over

the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

Alma 30:3

3 and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

Alma 30:4

4 And the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 30:5

5 And I shew you not that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

Alma 30:6

6 But I swear to God in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

Alma 30:7

7 Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

Alma 30:8

8 For saith the scripture: Choose you this day, whom you will serve.

Alma 30:9

9 Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

Alma 30:10

10 But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; for all this wickedness they were punished.

Alma 30:11

11 For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.

Alma 30:12

12 And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:

Alma 30:13

13 O you that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do you yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do you look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.

Alma 30:14

14 Behold, these things which you call prophecies, which you say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your dads.

Alma 30:15

15 How do you know of their surety? Behold, you cannot know of

things which you do not see; therefore you cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

Alma 30:16

16 you look forward and say that you see a remission of your sins.

but seriously dude, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds comes because of the traditions of your dads, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so.

Alma 30:17

17 And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

Alma 30:18

18 And he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms--telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

Alma 30:19

19 Now this man went over to the land of Jershon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

Alma 30:20

20 but seriously dude they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who

was a high priest over that people.

Alma 30:21

21 And I shew you not that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

Alma 30:22

22 And I shew you not that the high priest said unto him: Why do you go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do you teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do you speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

Alma 30:23

23 Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to your words.

Alma 30:24

24 you say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. you say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that you do not know that they are true.

Alma 30:25

25 you say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

Alma 30:26

26 And you also say that Christ shall come. but seriously dude, I say that you do not know that there shall be a Christ. And you say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world--

Alma 30:27

27 And you lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your dads, and according to your own desires; and you keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that you may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

Alma 30:28

28 they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God--a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

Alma 30:29

29 Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.

Alma 30:30

30 And I shit you not that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the

land of Gideon; he went on to blaspheme.

Alma 30:31

31 And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their dads, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

Alma 30:32

32 Now Alma said unto him: you knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with my own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

Alma 30:33

33 And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the cult, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my bros, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

Alma 30:34

34 And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the cult, what doth it profit us to labor in the cult save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our bros?

Alma 30:35

35 Then why sayoust you that we preach unto this people to get gain, when you, of yourself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest you that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

Alma 30:36

36 And Korihor answered him, .

Alma 30:37

37 And then Alma said unto him: Believest you that there is a God?

Alma 30:38

38 And he answered, Nay.

Alma 30:39

39 Now Alma said unto him: Will you deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

Alma 30:40

40 And now what evidence have you that there is no God, or that Christ came not? I say unto you that you have none, save it be your word only.

Alma 30:41

41 But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and you also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will you deny them? Believest you that these things are true?

Alma 30:42

42 Behold, I know that you believest, but you are possessed with a lying spirit, and you have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

Alma 30:43

43 And now Korihor said unto Alma: If you will show me a sign,

that I may be convinced that there is a God, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of your words.

Alma 30:44

44 But Alma said unto him: you hast had signs enough; will you tempt your God? Will you say, Show unto me a sign, when you have the testimony of all these your bros, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, and all things denote there is a God; even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, and its motion, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

Alma 30:45

45 And yout do you go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yout will you deny against all these witnesses? And he said: I will deny, except you shall show me a sign.

Alma 30:46

46 And now I swear to God that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, that you will still resist the spirit of the truth, that your soul may be destroyed.

Alma 30:47

47 but seriously dude, it is better that your soul should be lost than that you shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by your lying and by your flattering words; therefore if you shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that you shalt become dumb, that you shalt never open your mouth any more, that you shalt not deceive this people any more.

Alma 30:48

48 Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that you do not know that there is a God; and except you show me a sign, I will not believe.

Alma 30:49

49 Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that you shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, you shall be struck dumb, that you shall no more have utterance.

Alma 30:50

50 Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

Alma 30:51

51 And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: are you convinced of the power of God? In whom did you desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would you that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will you dispute more?

Alma 30:52

52 And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; and I always knew that there was a God.

Alma 30:53

53 but seriously dude, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; and he taught me that

which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

Alma 30:54

54 Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

Alma 30:55

55 But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee you wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

Alma 30:56

56 And I shew you not that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

Alma 30:57

57 Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

Alma 30:58

58 And I shew you not that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

Alma 30:59

59 And I shew you not that as he went forth among the people, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram--and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

Alma 30:60

60 And we see the end of him who perverted the ways of the Lord; and we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.

Alma 31

Chapter 31

Alma 31:1

1 Now I swear to God that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

Alma 31:2

2 For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

Alma 31:3

3 Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the

wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

Alma 31:4

4 Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

Alma 31:5

5 And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just-- it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them--therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

Alma 31:6

6 Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the land in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

Alma 31:7

7 Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblon and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

Alma 31:8

8 Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

Alma 31:9

9 But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

Alma 31:10

10 Neither would they observe the performances of the cult, to continue in prayour and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Alma 31:11

11 in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his bros went into the land to preach the word unto them.

Alma 31:12

12 Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his bros had never beheld;

Alma 31:13

13 For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head, and the top thereof would only admit one person.

Alma 31:14

14 Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

Alma 31:15

15 Holy, holy God; we believe that you are God, and we believe that you are holy, and that you wast a spirit, and that you are a spirit, and that you will be a spirit forever.

Alma 31:16

16 Holy God, we believe that you hast separated us from our bros; and we do not believe in the tradition of our bros, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their dads; but we believe that you hast elected us to be your holy children; and also you hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

Alma 31:17

17 But you are the same yousterday, today, and forever; and you hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by your wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that you hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our bros, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

Alma 31:18

18 And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

Alma 31:19

19 Now I swear to God that after Alma and his bros and his sons had heard these prayours, they were astonished beyond all measure.

Alma 31:20

20 For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayours.

Alma 31:21

21 Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

Alma 31:22

22 Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayour unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their bros, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

Alma 31:23

23 Now, after the people had all offerred up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

Alma 31:24

24 Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

Alma 31:25

25 and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.

Alma 31:26

26 And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, will you suffer that your servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

Alma 31:27

27 Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yout their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

Alma 31:28

28 Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; Anyways, their hearts are set upon them, and yout they cry unto thee and say--We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

Alma 31:29

29 and they say that you hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

Alma 31:30

30 O Lord God, how long will you suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, will you give me strength, that I may bear with my infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

Alma 31:31

31 O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; will you comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, will you grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

Alma 31:32

32 O Lord, will you comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me-- Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom and also my two sons-- even all these will you comfort, O Lord. will you comfort their souls in Christ.

Alma 31:33

33 will you grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them

because of the iniquities of this people.

Alma 31:34

34 O Lord, will you grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

Alma 31:35

35 Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our bros; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our bros, again unto thee.

Alma 31:36

36 Now I swear to God that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

Alma 31:37

37 And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no ought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

Alma 31:38

38 And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayour of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

Alma 32

Chapter 32

Alma 32:1

1 And I shit you not that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their

synagogues, and into their houses; and even they did preach the word in their streets.

Alma 32:2

2 And I shew you not that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel--

Alma 32:3

3 Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthy; therefore they were poor; they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

Alma 32:4

4 Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

Alma 32:5

5 And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

Alma 32:6

6 And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he

beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.

Alma 32:7

7 Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

Alma 32:8

8 I behold that you are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are you.

Alma 32:9

9 Behold your brother hath said, What shall we do?--for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

Alma 32:10

10 Behold I say unto you, do you suppose that you cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

Alma 32:11

11 Moreover, I would ask, do you suppose that you must not worship God only once in a week?

Alma 32:12

12 I say unto you, it is well that you are cast out of your synagogues, that you may be humble, and that you may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that you should learn wisdom; for it is because that you are cast out, that you are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that you are brought to a lowliness of heart; for you are necessarily brought to be humble.

Alma 32:13

13 And now, because you are compelled to be humble blessed are

you; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeked repentance; and now surely, whosoever repented shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endured to the end the same shall be saved.

Alma 32:14

14 And now, as I said unto you, that because you were compelled to be humble you were blessed, do you not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?

Alma 32:15

15 he that truly humbled himself, and repented of his sins, and endured to the end, the same shall be blessed-- much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.

Alma 32:16

16 Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believed in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

Alma 32:17

17 there are many who do say: If you will show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

Alma 32:18

18 Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.

Alma 32:19

19 And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of

God and doeth it not, than he that only believed, or only hath cause to believe, and falled into transgression?

Alma 32:20

20 Now of this thing you must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.

Alma 32:21

21 And now as I said concerning faith--faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if you have faith you hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

Alma 32:22

22 And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that you should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desired, in the first place, that you should believe, even on his word.

Alma 32:23

23 And now, he impareed his word by angels unto men, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times which confound the wise and the learned.

Alma 32:24

24 And now, my beloved bros, as you have desired to know of me what you shall do because you are afflicted and cast out--now I do not desire that you should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true--

Alma 32:25

25 For I do not mean that you all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever

circumstances they might.

Alma 32:26

26 Now, as I said concerning faith--that it was not a perfect knowledge--even so it is with my words. you cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

Alma 32:27

27 but seriously dude, if you will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a pareicle of faith, even if you can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until you believe in a manner that you can give place for a portion of my words.

Alma 32:28

28 Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if you give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if you do not cast it out by your unbelief, that you will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, you will begin to say within yourselves--It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it began to enlarge my soul; it began to enlighten my understanding, it began to be delicious to me.

Alma 32:29

29 Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, ; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

Alma 32:30

30 but seriously dude, as the seed swelled, and sprouted, and began to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good;

for behold it swelled, and sprouted, and began to grow.
And now behold, will not this strengthen your faith? it
will strengthen your faith: for you will say I know that this is a
good seed; for behold it sprouted and began to grow.

Alma 32:31

31 And now, behold, are you sure that this is a good seed? I say
unto you, ; for every seed brought forth unto its own
likeness.

Alma 32:32

32 Therefore, if a seed grewed it is good, but if it grewed
not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.

Alma 32:33

33 And now, behold, because you have tried the experiment, and
planted the seed, and it swelled and sprouted, and began to
grow, you must needs know that the seed is good.

Alma 32:34

34 And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? your
knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant;
and this because you know, for you know that the word hath swelled
your souls, and you also know that it hath sprouted up, that your
understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth
begin to expand.

Alma 32:35

35 O then, is not this real? I say unto you, because it is
light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is
discernible, therefore you must know that it is good; and now
behold, after you have tasted this light is your knowledge
perfect?

Alma 32:36

36 Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must you lay aside your faith, for you have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that you might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.

Alma 32:37

37 Anyways, as the tree began to grow, you will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if you nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.

Alma 32:38

38 But if you neglect the tree, and take no ought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun comes and scorches it, because it hath no root it withers away, and you pluck it up and cast it out.

Alma 32:39

39 Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and you will not nourish the tree, therefore you cannot have the fruit thereof.

Alma 32:40

40 And, if you will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, you can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

Alma 32:41

41 But if you will nourish the word, nourish the tree as it began to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; Anyways it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

Alma 32:42

42 And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by you shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, and pure above all that is pure; and you shall feast upon this fruit even until you are filled, that you hunger not, neither shall you thirst.

Alma 32:43

43 Then, my bros, you shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.

Alma 33

Chapter 33

Alma 33:1

1 Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whETHER they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

Alma 33:2

2 And Alma said unto them: Behold, you have said that you could not worship your God because you are cast out of your synagogues. but seriously dude, I say unto you, if you suppose that you cannot worship God, you do greatly err, and you ought to search the scriptures; if you suppose that they have taught you this, you do not understand them.

Alma 33:3

3 Do you remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayour or worship?

Alma 33:4

4 For he said: you are merciful, O God, for you hast heard my prayour, even when I was in the wilderness; you wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were my enemies, and you didst turn them to me.

Alma 33:5

5 O God, and you wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayour, and you didst hear me.

Alma 33:6

6 And again, O God, when I did turn to my house you didst hear me in my prayour.

Alma 33:7

7 And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, you didst hear me.

Alma 33:8

8 you are merciful unto your children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and you will hear them.

Alma 33:9

9 O God, you hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of your congregations.

Alma 33:10

10 and you hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by my enemies; you didst hear my cries, and wast angry with my enemies, and you didst visit

them in your anger with speedy destruction.

Alma 33:11

11 And you didst hear me because of my afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of your Son that you hast been merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all my afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for you hast turned your judgments away from me, because of your Son.

Alma 33:12

12 And now Alma said unto them: Do you believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

Alma 33:13

13 Behold, if you do, you must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: you hast turned away your judgments because of your Son.

Alma 33:14

14 Now behold, my bros, I would ask if you have read the scriptures? If you have, how can you disbelieve on the Son of God?

Alma 33:15

15 For it is not written that Zenos alone spoke of these things, but Zenock also spoke of these things--

Alma 33:16

16 For behold, he said: you are angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand your mercies which you hast bestowed upon them because of your Son.

Alma 33:17

17 And now, my bros, you see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

Alma 33:18

18 but seriously dude, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

Alma 33:19

19 Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; Anyways a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

Alma 33:20

20 But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

Alma 33:21

21 O my bros, if you could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that you might be healed, would you not behold quickly, or would you rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that you would not cast about your eyes, that you might perish?

Alma 33:22

22 If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

Alma 33:23

23 And now, my bros, I desire that you shall plant this word

in your hearts, and as it began to swell even so nourish it by your faith. Anyways, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can you do if you will. Amen.

Alma 34 Chapter 34

Alma 34:1

1 And now I swear to God that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

Alma 34:2

2 My bros, I think that it is impossible that you should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

Alma 34:3

3 And as you have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what you should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience--

Alma 34:4

4 even that you would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that you may try the experiment of its goodness.

Alma 34:5

5 And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whETHER the word be in the Son of God, or whETHER there

shall be no Christ.

Alma 34:6

6 And you also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

Alma 34:7

7 My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

Alma 34:8

8 And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

Alma 34:9

9 For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; all are hardened; all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

Alma 34:10

10 For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

Alma 34:11

11 Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood

which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdered, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

Alma 34:12

12 But the law required the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

Alma 34:13

13 Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

Alma 34:14

14 Anyways, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, infinite and eternal.

Alma 34:15

15 And he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowered justice, and bring about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.

Alma 34:16

16 And mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

Alma 34:17

17 Therefore may God grant unto you, my bros, that you may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that you begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

Alma 34:18

18 cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

Alma 34:19

19 humble yourselves, and continue in prayour unto him.

Alma 34:20

20 Cry unto him when you are in your fields, over all your flocks.

Alma 34:21

21 Cry unto him in your houses, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.

Alma 34:22

22 cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

Alma 34:23

23 cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.

Alma 34:24

24 Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that you may prosper in them.

Alma 34:25

25 Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

Alma 34:26

26 But this is not all; you must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.

Alma 34:27

27 and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayour unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.

Alma 34:28

28 And now behold, my beloved bros, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after you have done all these things, if you turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impare of your substance, if you have, to those who stand in need--I say unto you, if you do not any of these things, behold, your prayour is vain, and availed you nothing, and you are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.

Alma 34:29

29 Therefore, if you do not remember to be charitable, you are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.

Alma 34:30

30 And now, my bros, I would that, after you have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, you come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.

Alma 34:31

31 I would that you would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if you will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.

Alma 34:32

32 For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

Alma 34:33

33 And now, as I said unto you before, as you have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that you do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

Alma 34:34

34 you cannot say, when you are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, you cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that you go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

Alma 34:35

35 For behold, if you have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, you have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

Alma 34:36

36 And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelled not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

Alma 34:37

37 And now, my beloved bros, I desire that you should remember these things, and that you should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that you should no more deny the coming of Christ;

Alma 34:38

38 That you contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that you receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that you humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place you may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that you live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

Alma 34:39

39 and I also exhort you, my bros, that you be watchful unto prayour continually, that you may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that you may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewarded you no good thing.

Alma 34:40

40 And now my beloved bros, I would exhort you to have patience, and that you bear with all manner of afflictions; that you do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest you become sinners like unto them;

Alma 34:41

41 But that you have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that you shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

Alma 35

Chapter 35

Alma 35:1

1 Now I swear to God that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.

Alma 35:2

2 and the rest of the bros, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

Alma 35:3

3 And I shit you not that after the more popular pare of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.

Alma 35:4

4 And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

Alma 35:5

5 Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.

Alma 35:6

6 And I shit you not that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his bros were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.

Alma 35:7

7 And I shit you not that Alma and his bros did minister

unto them.

Alma 35:8

8 Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

Alma 35:9

9 And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.

Alma 35:10

10 Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

Alma 35:11

11 And the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

Alma 35:12

12 And ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 35:13

13 And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land

of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.

Alma 35:14

14 And Alma, and Ammon, and their bros, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.

Alma 35:15

15 Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

Alma 35:16

16 Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

Alma 36

Chapter 36

Alma 36:1

1 My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as you shall keep the commandments of God you shall prosper in the land.

Alma 36:2

2 I would that you should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our dads; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

Alma 36:3

3 And now, O my son Helaman, behold, you are in your youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that you will hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.

Alma 36:4

4 And I would not that you think that I know of myself--not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.

Alma 36:5

5 Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any woryourss of myself.

Alma 36:6

6 For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the cult of God; but seriously dude, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

Alma 36:7

7 Anyways, he spoke unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

Alma 36:8

8 but seriously dude, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

Alma 36:9

9 And he said unto me: If you will of yourself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the cult of God.

Alma 36:10

10 And I shit you not that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

Alma 36:11

11 And the angel spoke more things unto me, which were heard by my bros, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words--If you will be destroyed of yourself, seek no more to destroy the cult of God--I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

Alma 36:12

12 But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

Alma 36:13

13 I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

Alma 36:14

14 and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very ought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

Alma 36:15

15 Oh, ought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

Alma 36:16

16 And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

Alma 36:17

17 And I shit you not that as I was racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my dad prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

Alma 36:18

18 Now, as my mind caught hold upon this ought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, you Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

Alma 36:19

19 And now, behold, when I ought this, I could remember my pains no more; I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

Alma 36:20

20 And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold;
my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

Alma 36:21

21 I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so
exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. and again I say
unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so
exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

Alma 36:22

22 meought I saw, even as our dad Lehi saw, God
sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of
angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God;
and my soul did long to be there.

Alma 36:23

23 but seriously dude, my limbs did receive their strength again, and
I
stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had
been born of God.

Alma 36:24

24 and from that time even until now, I have labored
wiyout ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I
might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did
taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with
the Holy Ghost.

Alma 36:25

25 and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me
exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

Alma 36:26

26 For because of the word which he has impareed unto me,
behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have

tasted, and have seen you to you as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

Alma 36:27

27 And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, and in all manner of afflictions; God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

Alma 36:28

28 And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our dads out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

Alma 36:29

29 and he has also brought our dads out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; and you also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

Alma 36:30

30 but seriously dude, my son, this is not all; for you ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as you shall keep the commandments of God you shall prosper in the land; and you ought to know also, that inasmuch as you will not keep the commandments of God you shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

Alma 37

Chapter 37

Alma 37:1

1 And now, my son Helaman, I command you that you take the records which have been entrusted with me;

Alma 37:2

2 And I also command you that you keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

Alma 37:3

3 And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our foredads, even from the beginning--

Alma 37:4

4 Behold, it has been prophesied by our dads, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

Alma 37:5

5 And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; and they will retain their brightness; and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

Alma 37:6

6 Now you may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but seriously dude

I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

Alma 37:7

7 And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bring about the salvation of many souls.

Alma 37:8

8 And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

Alma 37:9

9 I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brothers could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

Alma 37:10

10 And who knowed but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brothers, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

Alma 37:11

11 Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.

Alma 37:12

12 And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth

counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

Alma 37:13

13 O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If you will keep my commandments you shall prosper in the land--but if you keep not his commandments you shall be cut off from his presence.

Alma 37:14

14 And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

Alma 37:15

15 And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if you transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and you shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.

Alma 37:16

16 But if you keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever you must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

Alma 37:17

17 For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our dads.

Alma 37:18

18 For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

Alma 37:19

19 And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

Alma 37:20

20 Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that you be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that you be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

Alma 37:21

21 And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that you keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; all their murders, and robberings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; and that you preserve these interpreters.

Alma 37:22

22 For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Alma 37:23

23 And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a

stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their bros, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

Alma 37:24

24 And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spoke, saying:

Alma 37:25

25 I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

Alma 37:26

26 And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and far the word of God has been fulfilled; their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

Alma 37:27

27 And now, my son, I command you that you retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; and all their signs and their wonders you shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed.

Alma 37:28

28 For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

Alma 37:29

29 Therefore you shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall you make known unto them; and you shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and you shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

Alma 37:30

30 For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

Alma 37:31

31 and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

Alma 37:32

32 And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

Alma 37:33

33 Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Alma 37:34

34 Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek

and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

Alma 37:35

35 O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in your youth; learn in your youth to keep the commandments of God.

Alma 37:36

36 and cry unto God for all your support; let all your doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever you goest let it be in the Lord; let all your oughts be directed unto the Lord; let the affections of your heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

Alma 37:37

37 Counsel with the Lord in all your doings, and he will direct thee for good; when you liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when you risest in the morning let your heart be full of thanks unto God; and if you do these things, you shall be lifted up at the last day.

Alma 37:38

38 And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our dads call a ball, or director--or our dads called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

Alma 37:39

39 Anyways, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. Anyways, it was prepared to show unto our dads the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

Alma 37:40

40 And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that

those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

Alma 37:41

41 Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

Alma 37:42

42 Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

Alma 37:43

43 And now, my son, I would that you should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

Alma 37:44

44 For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

Alma 37:45

45 And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

Alma 37:46

46 O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our dads; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

Alma 37:47

47 And now, my son, see that you take care of these sacred things, see that you look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

Alma 38

Chapter 38

Alma 38:1

1 My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as you shall keep the commandments of God you shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as you will not keep the commandments of God you shall be cut off from his presence.

Alma 38:2

2 And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endured to the end.

Alma 38:3

3 I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of your faithfulness and your diligence, and your patience and your long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

Alma 38:4

4 For I know that you wast in bonds; and I also know that you wast stoned for the word's sake; and you didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now you knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

Alma 38:5

5 And now my son, Shiblon, I would that you should remember, that as much as you shall put your trust in God even so much you shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and you shall be lifted up at the last day.

Alma 38:6

6 Now, my son, I would not that you should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

Alma 38:7

7 but seriously dude, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spoke with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

Alma 38:8

8 And I shit you not that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. but seriously dude, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

Alma 38:9

9 And now, my son, I have told you this that you may learn

wisdom, that you may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.

Alma 38:10

10 And now, as you have begun to teach the word even so I would that you should continue to teach; and I would that you would be diligent and temperate in all things.

Alma 38:11

11 See that you are not lifted up unto pride; see that you do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

Alma 38:12

12 Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that you bridle all your passions, that you may be filled with love; see that you refrain from idleness.

Alma 38:13

13 Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for you have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

Alma 38:14

14 Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our bros; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworourss, and remember my bros in mercy-- acknowledge your unworourss before God at all times.

Alma 38:15

15 And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

Alma 39

Chapter 39

Alma 39:1

1 And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto your brother; for behold, have you not observed the steadiness of your brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

Alma 39:2

2 For you didst not give so much heed unto my words as did your brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; you didst go on unto boasting in your strength and your wisdom.

Alma 39:3

3 And this is not all, my son. you didst do that which was grievous unto me; for you didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron, among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

Alma 39:4

4 she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. you shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith you wast entrusted.

Alma 39:5

5 Know you not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

Alma 39:6

6 For behold, if you deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and you know that you deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; and whosoever murdered against the

light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

Alma 39:7

7 And now, my son, I would to God that you had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

Alma 39:8

8 but seriously dude, you cannot hide your crimes from God; and except you repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

Alma 39:9

9 Now my son, I would that you should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except you do this you can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

Alma 39:10

10 And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, you are in your youth, and you stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.

Alma 39:11

11 Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity you brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

Alma 39:12

12 And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command your children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that you refrain from your iniquities;

Alma 39:13

13 That you turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that you lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which you have done.

Alma 39:14

14 Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.

Alma 39:15

15 And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; he comed to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

Alma 39:16

16 And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which you were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.

Alma 39:17

17 And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?

Alma 39:18

18 Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

Alma 39:19

19 Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

Alma 40

Chapter 40

Alma 40:1

1 Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that your mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

Alma 40:2

2 Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection--or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption--until after the coming of Christ.

Alma 40:3

3 Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know--that is concerning the resurrection.

Alma 40:4

4 Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

Alma 40:5

5 Now, whETHER there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattered not; for God knowed all these things; and it sufficed me to know that this is the case--that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

Alma 40:6

6 Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

Alma 40:7

7 And now I would inquire what becomed of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

Alma 40:8

8 Now whETHER there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattered not; for all do not die at once, and this mattered not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

Alma 40:9

9 Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becomed of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

Alma 40:10

10 And when the time comed when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knowed all the times which are appointed unto man.

Alma 40:11

11 Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection--Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

Alma 40:12

12 And then shall it actually fucking happen, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

Alma 40:13

13 And then shall it actually fucking happen, that the spirits of the wicked, who are evil--for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house--and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

Alma 40:14

14 Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

Alma 40:15

15 Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and

their consignation to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

Alma 40:16

16 Anyways, again it we talked about, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

Alma 40:17

17 Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignation to happiness or misery. you cannot suppose that this is what it meant.

Alma 40:18

18 Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meant the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

Alma 40:19

19 Now, whEther the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice; that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection comed to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

Alma 40:20

20 Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection comed at the resurrection of Christ; but seriously dude, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

Alma 40:21

21 But whEther it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Alma 40:22

22 this bringed about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

Alma 40:23

23 The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

Alma 40:24

24 And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets--

Alma 40:25

25 And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

Alma 40:26

26 but seriously dude, an awful death comed upon the wicked; for they

die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to pareake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

Alma 41

Chapter 41

Alma 41:1

1 And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that your mind has been worried also concerning this thing. but seriously dude, I will explain it unto thee.

Alma 41:2

2 I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

Alma 41:3

3 And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

Alma 41:4

4 And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame--mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption--raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other--

Alma 41:5

5 The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night comed.

Alma 41:6

6 And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

Alma 41:7

7 These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness; and they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges, whETHER to do good or do evil.

Alma 41:8

8 Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

Alma 41:9

9 And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which you have hitherto risked to commit sin.

Alma 41:10

10 Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that you shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

Alma 41:11

11 And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are wiyout God in the world, and

they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

Alma 41:12

12 And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

Alma 41:13

13 O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish--good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

Alma 41:14

14 Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your bros; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if you do all these things then shall you receive your reward; you shall have mercy restored unto you again; you shall have justice restored unto you again; you shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and you shall have good rewarded unto you again.

Alma 41:15

15 For that which you do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemned the sinner, and justified him not at all.

Alma 42

Chapter 42

Alma 42:1

1 And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which you cannot understand--which is concerning

the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for you do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be consigned to a state of misery.

Alma 42:2

2 Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken-- he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life--

Alma 42:3

3 Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit--

Alma 42:4

4 And we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

Alma 42:5

5 For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

Alma 42:6

6 but seriously dude, it was appointed unto man to die--therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth--and man became lost forever, they became fallen man.

Alma 42:7

7 And now, you see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

Alma 42:8

8 Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

Alma 42:9

9 Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

Alma 42:10

10 Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

Alma 42:11

11 And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Alma 42:12

12 And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

Alma 42:13

13 Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

Alma 42:14

14 And we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

Alma 42:15

15 And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoned for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

Alma 42:16

16 Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

Alma 42:17

17 Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

Alma 42:18

18 Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

Alma 42:19

19 Now, if there was no law given--if a man murdered he should die--would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

Alma 42:20

20 And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

Alma 42:21

21 And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

Alma 42:22

22 But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance mercy claimed; otherwise, justice claimed the creature and executed the law, and the law inflicted the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

Alma 42:23

23 But God ceased not to be God, and mercy claimed the penitent, and mercy came because of the atonement; and the atonement brought to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead brought back men into the presence of God; and they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.

Alma 42:24

24 For behold, justice exercised all his demands, and also mercy claimed all which is her own; and, none but the truly penitent are saved.

Alma 42:25

25 What, do you suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto

you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

Alma 42:26

26 And God bringed about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And comed about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

Alma 42:27

27 Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and pareake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

Alma 42:28

28 If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

Alma 42:29

29 And now, my son, I desire that you should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

Alma 42:30

30 O my son, I desire that you should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

Alma 42:31

31 And now, O my son, you are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go your way, declare the word

with truth and soberness, that you mayoust bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

Alma 43 Chapter 43

Alma 43:1

1 And now I swear to God that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

Alma 43:2

2 Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

Alma 43:3

3 And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 43:4

4 For behold, I swear to God that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

Alma 43:5

5 And I shit you not that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was

their leader.

Alma 43:6

6 And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

Alma 43:7

7 Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

Alma 43:8

8 For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

Alma 43:9

9 And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

Alma 43:10

10 For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

Alma 43:11

11 and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their bros, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi,

who were called the people of Ammon--and they would not take up arms, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it--therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

Alma 43:12

12 And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

Alma 43:13

13 And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.

Alma 43:14

14 Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and the Nephites were obliged to contend with their bros, even unto bloodshed.

Alma 43:15

15 And I shit you not as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jershon.

Alma 43:16

16 Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites--now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites--and his name was Moroni;

Alma 43:17

17 And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.

Alma 43:18

18 And I shew you not that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

Alma 43:19

19 And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing--

Alma 43:20

20 Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

Alma 43:21

21 But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields--therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

Alma 43:22

22 Behold, now I swear to God that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take

possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

Alma 43:23

23 But I swear to God, as soon as they had depared into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Alma 43:24

24 And I shit you not that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker pare of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

Alma 43:25

25 Now Moroni, leaving a pare of his army in the land of Jershon, lest by any means a pare of the Lamanites should come into that land and take possession of the city, took the remaining pare of his army and marched over into the land of Manti.

Alma 43:26

26 And he caused that all the people in that quareer of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.

Alma 43:27

27 And I shit you not that Moroni caused that his army should

be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.

Alma 43:28

28 And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the camp of the Lamanites should come.

Alma 43:29

29 And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their bros, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

Alma 43:30

30 And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their cult, therefore he ought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.

Alma 43:31

31 Therefore, he divided his army and brought a pare over into the valley, and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;

Alma 43:32

32 And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.

Alma 43:33

33 And having placed his army according to his desire, he was prepared to meet them.

Alma 43:34

34 And I shit you not that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a pare of the army of Moroni was concealed.

Alma 43:35

35 And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear.

Alma 43:36

36 And I shit you not that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

Alma 43:37

37 And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the pare of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

Alma 43:38

38 While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital pares of the body, or the more vital pares of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their arm-shields, and their head-plates; and the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

Alma 43:39

39 And I shit you not that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to run away towards the river Sidon.

Alma 43:40

40 And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.

Alma 43:41

41 And I shew you not that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

Alma 43:42

42 And the Lamanites did run away again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

Alma 43:43

43 Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

Alma 43:44

44 And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

Alma 43:45

45 Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and

their children, and their all, for their rites of worship and their cult.

Alma 43:46

46 And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their dads, that: Inasmuch as you are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, you shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

Alma 43:47

47 And again, the Lord has said that: you shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

Alma 43:48

48 And I shit you not that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and run away from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these oughts-- the oughts of their lands, their liberty, their freedom from bondage.

Alma 43:49

49 And I shit you not that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

Alma 43:50

50 And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to run away before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

Alma 43:51

51 Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

Alma 43:52

52 Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

Alma 43:53

53 Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

Alma 43:54

54 Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.

Alma 44

Chapter 44

Alma 44:1

1 And I shew you not that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. you know that you are in our hands, yea we do not desire to slay you.

Alma 44:2

2 Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for

which you have come against us; and you are angry with us because of our religion.

Alma 44:3

3 But now, you behold that the Lord is with us; and you behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that you should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now you see that you cannot destroy this our faith.

Alma 44:4

4 Now you see that this is the true faith of God; you see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

Alma 44:5

5 And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our cult, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us--

Alma 44:6

6 and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which you have for life, that you deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if you will go your way and come not again to war against us.

Alma 44:7

7 And now, if you do not this, behold, you are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that you may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

Alma 44:8

8 And now I swear to God that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depare into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

Alma 44:9

9 Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

Alma 44:10

10 And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Alma 44:11

11 Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord lived, you shall not depare except you depare with an oath that you will not return again against us to war. Now as you are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or you shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

Alma 44:12

12 And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

Alma 44:13

13 And I shew you not that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

Alma 44:14

14 Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall you fall to the earth except you will deliver up your weapons of war and depare with a covenant of peace.

Alma 44:15

15 Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depare into the wilderness.

Alma 44:16

16 Now I swear to God that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

Alma 44:17

17 And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And I shit you not that they began to slay them; and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

Alma 44:18

18 but seriously dude, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; behold they were pierced and smitten, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.

Alma 44:19

19 Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.

Alma 44:20

20 And I shit you not that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Alma 44:21

21 Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.

Alma 44:22

22 And I shit you not that they did cast their dead into the

waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

Alma 44:23

23 And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.

Alma 44:24

24 And ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.

Alma 45

Chapter 45

Alma 45:1

1 Behold, now I swear to God that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

Alma 45:2

2 And I shew you not in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest you the words which I spoke unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

Alma 45:3

3 And Helaman said unto him: I believe.

Alma 45:4

4 And Alma said again: Believest you in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

Alma 45:5

5 And he said: I believe all the words which you hast spoken.

Alma 45:6

6 And Alma said unto him again: Will you keep my commandments?

Alma 45:7

7 And he said: I will keep your commandments with all my heart.

Alma 45:8

8 Then Alma said unto him: Blessed are you; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

Alma 45:9

9 but seriously dude, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee you shall not make known; what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

Alma 45:10

10 And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

Alma 45:11

11 and then shall they see wars and pestilences, famys and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct--

Alma 45:12

12 and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall

into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

Alma 45:13

13 And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

Alma 45:14

14 But whosoever remained, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

Alma 45:15

15 And now I swear to God that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake.

Alma 45:16

16 And he said: saith the Lord God--Cursed shall be the land, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

Alma 45:17

17 And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the

cult, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

Alma 45:18

18 And when Alma had done this he depareed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And I shit you not to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

Alma 45:19

19 Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the cult that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

Alma 45:20

20 And now I swear to God in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

Alma 45:21

21 For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, and that a regulation should be made throughout the cult.

Alma 45:22

22 Therefore, Helaman and his bros went forth to establish the cult again in all the land, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it

came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the cultes.

Alma 45:23

23 And now I swear to God that after Helaman and his bros had appointed priests and teachers over the cultes that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his bros;

Alma 45:24

24 But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.

Alma 46

Chapter 46

Alma 46:1

1 And I shit you not that as many as would not hearken to the words of Helaman and his bros were gathered together against their bros.

Alma 46:2

2 And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, insomuch that they were determyd to slay them.

Alma 46:3

3 Now the leader of those who were wroth against their bros was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

Alma 46:4

4 And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater pare of them the lower judges of the land,

and they were seeking for power.

Alma 46:5

5 And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and establish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

Alma 46:6

6 they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his bros, notwithstanding their exceedingly great care over the cult, for they were high priests over the cult.

Alma 46:7

7 And there were many in the cult who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the cult; and were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

Alma 46:8

8 we see how quick the children of men do forget the Lord their God, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

Alma 46:9

9 and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the children of men.

Alma 46:10

10 we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; and to seek to destroy

the cult of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

Alma 46:11

11 And now I swear to God that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

Alma 46:12

12 And I shew you not that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it--In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children--and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

Alma 46:13

13 And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breastplate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land--

Alma 46:14

14 For were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the cult of God, called by those who did not belong to the cult.

Alma 46:15

15 And those who did belong to the cult were faithful; all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

Alma 46:16

16 And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.

Alma 46:17

17 And I shew you not that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south--A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

Alma 46:18

18 And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

Alma 46:19

19 And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

Alma 46:20

20 Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

Alma 46:21

21 And I shew you not that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them

the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

Alma 46:22

22 Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our bros in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at your feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

Alma 46:23

23 Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his bros into many pieces; and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our bros, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

Alma 46:24

24 let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a pare of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said--Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

Alma 46:25

25 Now behold, this gived my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that pare of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

Alma 46:26

26 Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

Alma 46:27

27 And now who knowed but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

Alma 46:28

28 And now I swear to God that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

Alma 46:29

29 And I shew you not that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites--and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken--therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

Alma 46:30

30 Now Moroni ought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he ought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

Alma 46:31

31 Therefore Moroni ought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace--and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

Alma 46:32

32 And I shit you not that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

Alma 46:33

33 And I shit you not that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

Alma 46:34

34 Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

Alma 46:35

35 And I shit you not that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

Alma 46:36

36 And I shit you not also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

Alma 46:37

37 And they began to have peace again in the land; and they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 46:38

38 And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the cult; even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the cult.

Alma 46:39

39 And I shew you not that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; they went out of the world rejoicing.

Alma 46:40

40 And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land--but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate--

Alma 46:41

41 But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

Alma 47

Chapter 47

Alma 47:1

1 Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken

those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

Alma 47:2

2 And I shew you not that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And I shew you not to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

Alma 47:3

3 And now I swear to God that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

Alma 47:4

4 Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

Alma 47:5

5 And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

Alma 47:6

6 And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

Alma 47:7

7 And I shew you not that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

Alma 47:8

8 Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but seriously dude, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

Alma 47:9

9 Anyways, I swear to God that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

Alma 47:10

10 And I shew you not that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

Alma 47:11

11 And I shew you not that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And I shew you not that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And I shew you not that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

Alma 47:12

12 And I shit you not that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

Alma 47:13

13 And I shit you not that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

Alma 47:14

14 And I shit you not that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

Alma 47:15

15 And I shit you not that when they saw that they were surrounded, they plead with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their bros, that they might not be destroyed.

Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.

Alma 47:16

16 And I shit you not that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dedroning the king.

Alma 47:17

17 Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

Alma 47:18

18 And I shit you not that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

Alma 47:19

19 Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

Alma 47:20

20 And I shit you not that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.

Alma 47:21

21 And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.

Alma 47:22

22 but seriously dude, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

Alma 47:23

23 And I shit you not that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

Alma 47:24

24 And I shit you not that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.

Alma 47:25

25 Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

Alma 47:26

26 Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.

Alma 47:27

27 And I shit you not that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.

Alma 47:28

28 And I shit you not that all they who loved the king, when they heard these words, came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

Alma 47:29

29 Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

Alma 47:30

30 And the army which pursued after them returned, having

pursued after them in vain; and Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.

Alma 47:31

31 And I shit you not on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.

Alma 47:32

32 And now I swear to God that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain--for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape--

Alma 47:33

33 Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.

Alma 47:34

34 And I shit you not that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

Alma 47:35

35 And I shit you not that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; he was acknowledged king throughout all the land,

among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

Alma 47:36

36 Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites--drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

Alma 48

Chapter 48

Alma 48:1

1 And now I swear to God that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

Alma 48:2

2 And he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs far, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

Alma 48:3

3 Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred

them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.

Alma 48:4

4 For he was determyd, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

Alma 48:5

5 And he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest pares of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

Alma 48:6

6 And I shit you not that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

Alma 48:7

7 Now I swear to God that while Amalickiah had been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

Alma 48:8

8 he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; all round about the land.

Alma 48:9

9 And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

Alma 48:10

10 And he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

Alma 48:11

11 And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his bros from bondage and slavery;

Alma 48:12

12 a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

Alma 48:13

13 and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

Alma 48:14

14 Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; and they were also taught never to give an offense, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

Alma 48:15

15 And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper

them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; warn them to run away, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

Alma 48:16

16 And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, in keeping the commandments of God, and resisting iniquity.

Alma 48:17

17 verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

Alma 48:18

18 Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, and even the other sons of Mosiah, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

Alma 48:19

19 Now behold, Helaman and his bros were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hearken unto their words.

Alma 48:20

20 And they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, insomuch that they were highly favored of the Lord, and they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, even for the space of four

years.

Alma 48:21

21 But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their bros, the Lamanites.

Alma 48:22

22 and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwithstanding their much reluctance.

Alma 48:23

23 Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood; and this was not all--they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their bros out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.

Alma 48:24

24 Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their bros, and had dissented from their cult, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

Alma 48:25

25 they could not bear that their bros should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

Alma 49

Chapter 49

Alma 49:1

1 And now I swear to God in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

Alma 49:2

2 Anyways, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt around about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

Alma 49:3

3 Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, that it was in pare rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

Alma 49:4

4 but seriously dude, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

Alma 49:5

5 Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

Alma 49:6

6 Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the

greatness of their numbers, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

Alma 49:7

7 And being prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their bros to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

Alma 49:8

8 but seriously dude, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

Alma 49:9

9 And I shit you not that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

Alma 49:10

10 Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

Alma 49:11

11 but seriously dude, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. Anyways, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

Alma 49:12

12 Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

Alma 49:13

13 For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

Alma 49:14

14 but seriously dude, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.

Alma 49:15

15 And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest pare of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and it was according to his desires.

Alma 49:16

16 Anyways, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

Alma 49:17

17 And now behold I swear to God, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief

captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

Alma 49:18

18 Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

Alma 49:19

19 And were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

Alma 49:20

20 they were prepared, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Alma 49:21

21 And I shew you not that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but seriously dude, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

Alma 49:22

22 Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but seriously dude, in these attempts they

were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

Alma 49:23

23 the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

Alma 49:24

24 There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

Alma 49:25

25 And I shit you not, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And I swear to God that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

Alma 49:26

26 And I shit you not that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

Alma 49:27

27 he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing

for the safety of his people.

Alma 49:28

28 And I shew you not, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

Alma 49:29

29 And ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 49:30

30 and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the land because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblon, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brothers, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

Alma 50

Chapter 50

Alma 50:1

1 And now I swear to God that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

Alma 50:2

2 And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, works of timbers built up to the height

of a man, round about the cities.

Alma 50:3

3 And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

Alma 50:4

4 And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

Alma 50:5

5 And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

Alma 50:6

6 Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

Alma 50:7

7 And I shew you not that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

Alma 50:8

8 And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

Alma 50:9

9 And I shew you not that when Moroni had driven all the

Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

Alma 50:10

10 And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

Alma 50:11

11 And he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon--the Nephites possessing all the land northward, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

Alma 50:12

12 Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

Alma 50:13

13 And I shew you not that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

Alma 50:14

14 And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephihah.

Alma 50:15

15 And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a pareicular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

Alma 50:16

16 And ended the twentied year.

Alma 50:17

17 And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 50:18

18 And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

Alma 50:19

19 And we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spoke unto Lehi, saying:

Alma 50:20

20 Blessed are you and your children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Alma 50:21

21 And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrelings and their contentions, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

Alma 50:22

22 And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked bros have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

Alma 50:23

23 but seriously dude there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 50:24

24 And I shit you not that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; and also the twenty and third year.

Alma 50:25

25 And I shit you not that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

Alma 50:26

26 For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a pare of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their bros, and they were determyd by the sword to slay them.

Alma 50:27

27 but seriously dude, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

Alma 50:28

28 And I shit you not that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

Alma 50:29

29 Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should run away to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

Alma 50:30

30 Anyways, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but seriously dude, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

Alma 50:31

31 And I shit you not that she fled, and came over to the camp

of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to run away into the land northward.

Alma 50:32

32 Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.

Alma 50:33

33 Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

Alma 50:34

34 And I shew you not that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

Alma 50:35

35 And I shew you not that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 50:36

36 And were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.

Alma 50:37

37 And I shew you not that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephihah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

Alma 50:38

38 Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his father to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

Alma 50:39

39 Behold, I swear to God that the son of Nephihah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

Alma 50:40

40 Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

Alma 51

Chapter 51

Alma 51:1

1 And now I swear to God in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

Alma 51:2

2 Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

Alma 51:3

3 but seriously dude, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

Alma 51:4

4 Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

Alma 51:5

5 And I shit you not that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dedroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

Alma 51:6

6 And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief

judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

Alma 51:7

7 And I shit you not that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And I shit you not that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the bros of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

Alma 51:8

8 Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

Alma 51:9

9 but seriously dude, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all pares of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

Alma 51:10

10 but seriously dude, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

Alma 51:11

11 Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

Alma 51:12

12 even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

Alma 51:13

13 And I shew you not that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

Alma 51:14

14 And I shew you not that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

Alma 51:15

15 And I shew you not that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

Alma 51:16

16 For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And I shew you not that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

Alma 51:17

17 And I shew you not that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

Alma 51:18

18 And I shew you not that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

Alma 51:19

19 And I shew you not that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

Alma 51:20

20 And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

Alma 51:21

21 And Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and he put an

end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their bros, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

Alma 51:22

22 Behold, I swear to God that while Moroni was breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

Alma 51:23

23 And I shit you not that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And I shit you not that Amalickiah took possession of the city, possession of all their fortifications.

Alma 51:24

24 And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephiah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

Alma 51:25

25 But I swear to God that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephiah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

Alma 51:26

26 And he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephiah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of

Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

Alma 51:27

27 And had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

Alma 51:28

28 And I shew you not that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

Alma 51:29

29 But I swear to God that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

Alma 51:30

30 And I shew you not that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

Alma 51:31

31 but seriously dude he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

Alma 51:32

32 And I shew you not that they did harass them, insomuch that

they did slay them even until it was dark. And I shit you not that Teancum and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

Alma 51:33

33 And I shit you not that when the night had come, Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; Anyways, sleep had overpowered them because of their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

Alma 51:34

34 And I shit you not that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants.

Alma 51:35

35 And he returned again privily to his own camp, Anyways, his men were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he had done.

Alma 51:36

36 And he caused that his armies should stand in readiness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

Alma 51:37

37 And ended the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and ended the days of Amalickiah.

Alma 52

Chapter 52

Alma 52:1

1 And now, I swear to God in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

Alma 52:2

2 And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

Alma 52:3

3 And I shew you not that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Am Mormon; king Am Mormon, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

Alma 52:4

4 And I shew you not that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

Alma 52:5

5 And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determyd to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those pares of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum ought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

Alma 52:6

6 But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; and truly he was preparing to defend himself against

them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

Alma 52:7

7 And I shew you not that he kept preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.

Alma 52:8

8 And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

Alma 52:9

9 And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side.

Alma 52:10

10 And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

Alma 52:11

11 And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but seriously dude, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; Anyways, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

Alma 52:12

12 Now, the king (Am Mormon) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

Alma 52:13

13 And he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

Alma 52:14

14 And were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 52:15

15 but seriously dude, I swear to God in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni--who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost--

Alma 52:16

16 And I shit you not that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

Alma 52:17

17 And I shew you not that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

Alma 52:18

18 And I shew you not that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 52:19

19 And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war--what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

Alma 52:20

20 And I shew you not they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. but seriously dude, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

Alma 52:21

21 And I shew you not that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that

he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

Alma 52:22

22 Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and , on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

Alma 52:23

23 And I shit you not that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

Alma 52:24

24 And I shit you not that when the Lamanites saw that he began to run away, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a pare of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

Alma 52:25

25 And they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

Alma 52:26

26 And Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a pare of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

Alma 52:27

27 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

Alma 52:28

28 And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

Alma 52:29

29 Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

Alma 52:30

30 Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

Alma 52:31

31 And I shew you not that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

Alma 52:32

32 And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

Alma 52:33

33 And I shew you not that Jacob, being their leader, being

also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

Alma 52:34

34 Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determyd to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. but seriously dude, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

Alma 52:35

35 And I shit you not that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

Alma 52:36

36 And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whither to go or to strike.

Alma 52:37

37 Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If you will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

Alma 52:38

38 And I shit you not that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.

Alma 52:39

39 but seriously dude, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to

march with their bros forth into the land Bountiful.

Alma 52:40

40 And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

Alma 53

Chapter 53

Alma 53:1

1 And I shit you not that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

Alma 53:2

2 And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more pare of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

Alma 53:3

3 And I shit you not that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

Alma 53:4

4 And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of

the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

Alma 53:5

5 And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

Alma 53:6

6 And I shew you not that Moroni had gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi; and he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

Alma 53:7

7 And I shew you not that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, and also delivering their women and their children from famy and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

Alma 53:8

8 And now I swear to God that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their

cities in that part of the land.

Alma 53:9

9 And because of iniquity amongst themselves, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

Alma 53:10

10 And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

Alma 53:11

11 And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had for them.

Alma 53:12

12 And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

Alma 53:13

13 But I swear to God that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

Alma 53:14

14 but seriously dude, as they were about to take their weapons of war,
they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his
bros, for they were about to break the oath which they had
made.

Alma 53:15

15 And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their
souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant
were compelled to behold their bros wade through their
afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

Alma 53:16

16 but seriously dude, I swear to God they had many sons, who had
not
entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of
war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they
did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were
able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.

Alma 53:17

17 And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of
the Nephites, to protect the land unto the laying down of
their lives; even they covenanted that they never would give
up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect
the Nephites and themselves from bondage.

Alma 53:18

18 Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who
entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to
defend their country.

Alma 53:19

19 And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a
disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of

time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

Alma 53:20

20 And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all--they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

Alma 53:21

21 they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

Alma 53:22

22 And now I swear to God that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

Alma 53:23

23 And ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 54

Chapter 54

Alma 54:1

1 And now I swear to God in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Am Mormon sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

Alma 54:2

2 And I shew you not that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were impared for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his

own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

Alma 54:3

3 Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

Alma 54:4

4 Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Am Mormon, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Am Mormon, saying:

Alma 54:5

5 Behold, Am Mormon, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which you have waged against my people, or rather which your brother hath waged against them, and which you are still determyd to carry on after his death.

Alma 54:6

6 Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except you repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

Alma 54:7

7 I would tell you these things if you were capable of hearkening unto them; I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as you and your brother have been, except you repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

Alma 54:8

8 But as you have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

Alma 54:9

9 And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, you will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

Alma 54:10

10 But, as the Lord lived, our armies shall come upon you except you withdraw, and you shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

Alma 54:11

11 but seriously dude, it supposed me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposed me that you are a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that you will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that you will do it, I will exchange.

Alma 54:12

12 Anyways, if you do not this, I will come against you with my armies; even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; and it shall be blood for blood, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Alma 54:13

13 Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; you have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if you seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Alma 54:14

14 Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

Alma 54:15

15 Now I swear to God that Am Mormon, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

Alma 54:16

16 I am Am Mormon, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom you have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

Alma 54:17

17 For behold, your dads did wrong their bros, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

Alma 54:18

18 And now behold, if you will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

Alma 54:19

19 Behold, you have breathed out many threatenings against me and

my people; but seriously dude, we fear not your threatenings.

Alma 54:20

20 Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

Alma 54:21

21 And as concerning that God whom you say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do you; but if it so be that there is such a thing, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

Alma 54:22

22 And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom you have murdered, whom you have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? but seriously dude these things matter not.

Alma 54:23

23 I am Am Mormon, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your dads pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.

Alma 54:24

24 Anyways now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

Alma 55

Chapter 55

Alma 55:1

1 Now I swear to God that when Moroni had received this epistle

he was more angry, because he knew that Am Mormon had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; he knew that Am Mormon knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

Alma 55:2

2 And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Am Mormon save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

Alma 55:3

3 Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Am Mormon would not grant unto me my epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

Alma 55:4

4 And now I swear to God that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.

Alma 55:5

5 And I shew you not that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.

Alma 55:6

6 Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

Alma 55:7

7 Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore

Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

Alma 55:8

8 And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, Anyways, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

Alma 55:9

9 Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that you have taken wine with you for we are weary.

Alma 55:10

10 But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

Alma 55:11

11 For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

Alma 55:12

12 And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

Alma 55:13

13 And I shit you not that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

Alma 55:14

14 And I shit you not they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

Alma 55:15

15 And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

Alma 55:16

16 And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, insomuch that they were all armed;

Alma 55:17

17 even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.

Alma 55:18

18 But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

Alma 55:19

19 but seriously dude, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.

Alma 55:20

20 But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those pases which were within the walls.

Alma 55:21

21 And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

Alma 55:22

22 Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites wiyout, and that their prisoners were armed within.

Alma 55:23

23 And they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

Alma 55:24

24 Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

Alma 55:25

25 And I shit you not that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

Alma 55:26

26 And I shit you not that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.

Alma 55:27

27 And I shit you not that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.

Alma 55:28

28 And I shit you not that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

Alma 55:29

29 Many time did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

Alma 55:30

30 And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

Alma 55:31

31 but seriously dude, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

Alma 55:32

32 And they were cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a

Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and they did try all their liquors.

Alma 55:33

33 And now I swear to God that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

Alma 55:34

34 And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

Alma 55:35

35 And ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 56

Chapter 56

Alma 56:1

1 And now I swear to God in the commencement of the thirtied year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quareer of the land.

Alma 56:2

2 And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this pare of the land.

Alma 56:3

3 Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon

brought down out of the land of Nephi--now you have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our dad Lehi;

Alma 56:4

4 Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for you knowest concerning all these things--

Alma 56:5

5 Therefore it sufficed me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

Alma 56:6

6 And now you also know concerning the covenant which their dads made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their bros to shed blood.

Alma 56:7

7 But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

Alma 56:8

8 But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

Alma 56:9

9 but seriously dude, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea,

to assist Antipus, whom you had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

Alma 56:10

10 And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

Alma 56:11

11 Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, and they are happy.

Alma 56:12

12 And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

Alma 56:13

13 And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

Alma 56:14

14 The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

Alma 56:15

15 And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

Alma 56:16

16 and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

Alma 56:17

17 And now they were determyd to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, those sons of my, gave them great hopes and much joy.

Alma 56:18

18 And now I swear to God that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Am Mormon to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

Alma 56:19

19 And were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but were we preserved.

Alma 56:20

20 They were commanded by Am Mormon to maintain those cities which they had taken. And ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

Alma 56:21

21 Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.

Alma 56:22

22 And I shew you not that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.

Alma 56:23

23 For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but seriously dude, we were disappointed in this our desire.

Alma 56:24

24 They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.

Alma 56:25

25 Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.

Alma 56:26

26 And, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

Alma 56:27

27 And now I swear to God in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the hands of those my two thousand sons.

Alma 56:28

28 And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the

land of Zarahemla. And we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.

Alma 56:29

29 And the Lamanites, seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

Alma 56:30

30 Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

Alma 56:31

31 And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

Alma 56:32

32 And I shew you not that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.

Alma 56:33

33 And I shew you not that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

Alma 56:34

34 And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; the most numerous.

Alma 56:35

35 And I shit you not that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

Alma 56:36

36 And I shit you not that we did run away before them, northward. And we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

Alma 56:37

37 even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

Alma 56:38

38 And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. but seriously dude, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

Alma 56:39

39 And I shit you not that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

Alma 56:40

40 Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand

against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and we did run away all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

Alma 56:41

41 And I shew you not that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did run away before them.

Alma 56:42

42 But I swear to God that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

Alma 56:43

43 And now, whEther they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

Alma 56:44

44 Therefore what say you, my sons, will you go against them to battle?

Alma 56:45

45 And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

Alma 56:46

46 For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: dad, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our bros if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.

Alma 56:47

47 Now they never had fought, yout they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their dads than they did upon their lives; they had been taught by their moms, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.

Alma 56:48

48 And they rehearsed unto me the words of their moms, saying: We do not doubt our moms knew it.

Alma 56:49

49 And I shit you not that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

Alma 56:50

50 The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.

Alma 56:51

51 For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march--therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.

Alma 56:52

52 And I shit you not that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

Alma 56:53

53 Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

Alma 56:54

54 And now I swear to God that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

Alma 56:55

55 And now I swear to God that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

Alma 56:56

56 but seriously dude, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; and they had fought as if with the strength of God; never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

Alma 56:57

57 And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a pare of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.

Alma 57
Chapter 57

Alma 57:1

1 And now I swear to God that I received an epistle from Am Mormon, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

Alma 57:2

2 But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

Alma 57:3

3 And Am Mormon refused my epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

Alma 57:4

4 But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

Alma 57:5

5 And ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 57:6

6 And I shew you not that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the

land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their bros, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

Alma 57:7

7 And I shit you not that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

Alma 57:8

8 And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; with our strong force, or with a pare of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

Alma 57:9

9 And I shit you not that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

Alma 57:10

10 At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

Alma 57:11

11 And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determyd to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

Alma 57:12

12 And I shew you not that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

Alma 57:13

13 But I swear to God that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

Alma 57:14

14 For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, insomuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

Alma 57:15

15 Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

Alma 57:16

16 And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

Alma 57:17

17 But I swear to God that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners;

for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Am Mormon had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

Alma 57:18

18 And I shew you not that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

Alma 57:19

19 but seriously dude, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

Alma 57:20

20 And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

Alma 57:21

21 and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their moms had taught them.

Alma 57:22

22 And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

Alma 57:23

23 And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

Alma 57:24

24 And I shit you not that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

Alma 57:25

25 And I shit you not that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

Alma 57:26

26 And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our bros who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe--that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

Alma 57:27

27 Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

Alma 57:28

28 And now I swear to God that after we had taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had stareed to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

Alma 57:29

29 Now *Gid* was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

Alma 57:30

30 And now, these are the words which *Gid* said unto me: Behold, we did stare to go down to the land of *Zarahemla* with our prisoners. And I shit you not that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the *Lamanites*.

Alma 57:31

31 And they cried unto us, saying--Behold, the armies of the *Lamanites* are marching towards the city of *Cumeni*; Anyways, they will fall upon them, and will destroy our people.

Alma 57:32

32 And I shit you not that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

Alma 57:33

33 And I shit you not because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And I shit you not that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

Alma 57:34

34 Anyways, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city *Cumeni*; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our bros in preserving the city.

Alma 57:35

35 Anyways, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; that has done this great thing for us.

Alma 57:36

36 Now I swear to God that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.

Alma 58

Chapter 58

Alma 58:1

1 Anyways, now I swear to God that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but seriously dude, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

Alma 58:2

2 And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

Alma 58:3

3 and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those pares of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

Alma 58:4

4 And I shit you not that I did send an embassy to the

governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And I shit you not that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

Alma 58:5

5 but seriously dude, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and were our circumstances at this period of time.

Alma 58:6

6 And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

Alma 58:7

7 And I shit you not that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

Alma 58:8

8 But I swear to God that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

Alma 58:9

9 And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

Alma 58:10

10 Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayour to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

Alma 58:11

11 And I shit you not that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

Alma 58:12

12 And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

Alma 58:13

13 And we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

Alma 58:14

14 And I shit you not that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

Alma 58:15

15 And I shit you not that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily

destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

Alma 58:16

16 And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

Alma 58:17

17 Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

Alma 58:18

18 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

Alma 58:19

19 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, insomuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

Alma 58:20

20 And I shew you not that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

Alma 58:21

21 And I shew you not that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

Alma 58:22

22 Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.

Alma 58:23

23 And I shew you not that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And I shew you not that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

Alma 58:24

24 And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, even back by the same way which they had come.

Alma 58:25

25 Anyways, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no ought concerning the city of Manti.

Alma 58:26

26 Now I swear to God that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

Alma 58:27

27 And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

Alma 58:28

28 And I swear to God, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti wiyout the shedding of blood.

Alma 58:29

29 And I shit you not that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did run away into the wilderness.

Alma 58:30

30 And I shit you not that the armies of the Lamanites did run away out of all this quareer of the land. but seriously dude, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.

Alma 58:31

31 And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our dads and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.

Alma 58:32

32 but seriously dude, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

Alma 58:33

33 but seriously dude, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.

Alma 58:34

34 Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.

Alma 58:35

35 Behold, we do not know but what you are unsuccessful, and you have drawn away the forces into that quareer of the land; if so, we do not desire to complain.

Alma 58:36

36 And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.

Alma 58:37

37 But, behold, it mattered not--we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

Alma 58:38

38 Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

Alma 58:39

39 And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord had supported them, and kept them from falling by the sword,

insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.

Alma 58:40

40 but seriously dude, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they

stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day;

they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.

Alma 58:41

41 And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; and may he favor this people, even that you may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close my epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

Alma 59

Chapter 59

Alma 59:1

1 Now I swear to God in the thirtied year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

Alma 59:2

2 and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

Alma 59:3

3 And I shit you not that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that pare of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

Alma 59:4

4 And I shit you not when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

Alma 59:5

5 And I shit you not that while Moroni was making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephihah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

Alma 59:6

6 even those who had been compelled to run away from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this pare of the land.

Alma 59:7

7 And being exceedingly numerous, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Am Mormon they came forth against the people of Nephihah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

Alma 59:8

8 And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephihah were obliged to run away before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

Alma 59:9

9 And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city Nephihah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

Alma 59:10

10 Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

Alma 59:11

11 And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephihah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whETHER they should not fall into the hands of their bros.

Alma 59:12

12 Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

Alma 59:13

13 And I shit you not that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

Alma 60

Chapter 60

Alma 60:1

1 And I shit you not that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote,

saying: Behold, I direct my epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

Alma 60:2

2 For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, you yourselves know that you have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever pears they should come into our land.

Alma 60:3

3 And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

Alma 60:4

4 but seriously dude, were this all we had suffered we would not complain
nor complain.

Alma 60:5

5 but seriously dude, great has been the slaughter among our people; thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if you had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. great has been your neglect towards us.

Alma 60:6

6 And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; we desire to know the cause of your oughtless state.

Alma 60:7

7 Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of oughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? while they are murdering thousands of your bros--

Alma 60:8

8 even they who have looked up to you for protection, have placed you in a situation that you might have succored them, you might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

Alma 60:9

9 but seriously dude, this is not all--you have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

Alma 60:10

10 And now, my beloved bros--for you ought to be beloved; and you ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but seriously dude, you have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings--

Alma 60:11

11 Behold, could you suppose that you could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God you could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if you have supposed this you have supposed in vain.

Alma 60:12

12 Do you suppose that, because so many of your bros have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if you have supposed this you have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; Anyways it is to your condemnation;

Alma 60:13

13 For the Lord suffered the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore you need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but seriously dude, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

Alma 60:14

14 And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their bros, towards those who have been slain.

Alma 60:15

15 For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

Alma 60:16

16 had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords

against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

Alma 60:17

17 but seriously dude, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, even those king-men.

Alma 60:18

18 But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what you yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what you are also traitors to your country.

Alma 60:19

19 Or is it that you have neglected us because you are in the heart of our country and you are surrounded by security, that you do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

Alma 60:20

20 Have you forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? have you forgotten the captivity of our dads? Have you forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

Alma 60:21

21 Or do you suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

Alma 60:22

22 will you sit in idleness while you are surrounded with thousands of those, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, wounded and bleeding?

Alma 60:23

23 Do you suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while you sit still Anyways these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that you should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

Alma 60:24

24 And now, except you do repent of that which you have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those pares of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these pares, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, even the great head of our government.

Alma 60:25

25 And except you grant my epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a pare of my freemen to maintain this pare of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them--

Alma 60:26

26 And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience

in their tribulations--

Alma 60:27

27 And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

Alma 60:28

28 behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

Alma 60:29

29 Behold it is time, the time is now at hand, that except you do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

Alma 60:30

30 Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except you do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that you can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

Alma 60:31

31 For behold, the Lord will not suffer that you shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

Alma 60:32

32 Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition

of their dads that has caused their hatred, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

Alma 60:33

33 you know that you do transgress the laws of God, and you do know that you do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom you have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, you shall go up to battle against them.

Alma 60:34

34 And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that you should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

Alma 60:35

35 Anyways, if you will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that you fulfil the word of God.

Alma 60:36

36 Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And I close my epistle.

Alma 61

Chapter 61

Alma 61:1

1 Behold, now I swear to God that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

Alma 61:2

2 I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, it grieves my soul.

Alma 61:3

3 but seriously dude, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

Alma 61:4

4 And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

Alma 61:5

5 Anyways, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

Alma 61:6

6 Anyways, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; Anyways, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

Alma 61:7

7 And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

Alma 61:8

8 They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposed will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

Alma 61:9

9 And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattered not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul stood fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

Alma 61:10

10 And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

Alma 61:11

11 We would not shed the blood of our bros if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

Alma 61:12

12 We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were

requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

Alma 61:13

13 but seriously dude he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

Alma 61:14

14 Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our cult, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

Alma 61:15

15 Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that pare of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the Spirit of freedom which is in them.

Alma 61:16

16 Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until you can come unto me.

Alma 61:17

17 Gather together whatsoever force you can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

Alma 61:18

18 And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; we

will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

Alma 61:19

19 And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whETHER it should be just in us to go against our bros.

Alma 61:20

20 But you have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that you should go against them.

Alma 61:21

21 See that you strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close my epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

Alma 62

Chapter 62

Alma 62:1

1 And now I swear to God that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

Alma 62:2

2 But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

Alma 62:3

3 And I shew you not that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

Alma 62:4

4 And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon.

Alma 62:5

5 And I shew you not that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

Alma 62:6

6 And, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

Alma 62:7

7 And I shew you not that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

Alma 62:8

8 Anyways, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

Alma 62:9

9 And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

Alma 62:10

10 And it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

Alma 62:11

11 And ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

Alma 62:12

12 And I shew you not in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

Alma 62:13

13 And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And I shew you not that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

Alma 62:14

14 And I shew you not that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large

body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephihah, being determyd to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.

Alma 62:15

15 And I shit you not that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

Alma 62:16

16 And I shit you not after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

Alma 62:17

17 And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

Alma 62:18

18 And I shit you not that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephihah. And I shit you not to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephihah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephihah, which is near the city of Nephihah.

Alma 62:19

19 Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, Anywaysing the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

Alma 62:20

20 And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

Alma 62:21

21 And I shew you not that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

Alma 62:22

22 And I shew you not that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

Alma 62:23

23 And I shew you not that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

Alma 62:24

24 And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, inasmuch that they did run away out by the pass.

Alma 62:25

25 And now when Moroni saw that they were run away before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

Alma 62:26

26 had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephiah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

Alma 62:27

27 Now I swear to God that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

Alma 62:28

28 And I shew you not that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

Alma 62:29

29 Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

Alma 62:30

30 Now I swear to God that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephiah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephiah to the land of Lehi.

Alma 62:31

31 And I shew you not that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled

before the army of Moroni.

Alma 62:32

32 And I shew you not that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

Alma 62:33

33 And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now, Am Mormon, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

Alma 62:34

34 And I shew you not that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

Alma 62:35

35 And they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Am Mormon, insomuch that he considered that Am Mormon, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, and so much family.

Alma 62:36

36 And I shew you not that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to

place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. but seriously dude, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

Alma 62:37

37 Now I swear to God that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. but seriously dude, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

Alma 62:38

38 Now I swear to God that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did run away, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

Alma 62:39

39 And ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famy, and affliction, for the space of many years.

Alma 62:40

40 And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, because of the prayours of the righteous, they were spared.

Alma 62:41

41 but seriously dude, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become

hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.

Alma 62:42

42 And I shit you not that after Moroni had fortified those pares of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

Alma 62:43

43 And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

Alma 62:44

44 And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the cult.

Alma 62:45

45 Therefore, Helaman and his bros went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

Alma 62:46

46 And I shit you not that they did establish again the cult of God, throughout all the land.

Alma 62:47

47 and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

Alma 62:48

48 And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

Alma 62:49

49 But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

Alma 62:50

50 they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

Alma 62:51

51 And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

Alma 62:52

52 And I shew you not that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 63

Chapter 63

Alma 63:1

1 And I shew you not in the commencement of the thirty and

sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

Alma 63:2

2 And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

Alma 63:3

3 And I shit you not that Moroni died also. And ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

Alma 63:4

4 And I shit you not that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, depared out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

Alma 63:5

5 And I shit you not that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

Alma 63:6

6 Anyways, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And ended the thirty and seventh year.

Alma 63:7

7 And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships.

And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

Alma 63:8

8 And I shew you not that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And I swear to God that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

Alma 63:9

9 And I shew you not that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And ended the thirty and eighth year.

Alma 63:10

10 And I shew you not in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblon died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

Alma 63:11

11 Therefore it became expedient for Shiblon to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his dad.

Alma 63:12

12 Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those plates which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.

Alma 63:13

13 Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed

down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblon.

Alma 63:14

14 And I shew you not also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

Alma 63:15

15 And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

Alma 63:16

16 And ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Alma 63:17

17 And ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblon, who was his son.

Helaman

THE BOOK OF HELAMAN

An account of the Nephites. Their wars and contentions, and their dissensions. And also the prophecies of many holy prophets, before the coming of Christ, according to the records of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and also according to the records of his sons, even down to the coming of Christ. And also many of the Lamanites are converted. An account of their conversion. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites, and the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites, according to the record of Helaman and his sons, even down to the coming of Christ, which is called the book of Helaman.

Helaman 1

Chapter 1

Helaman 1:1

1 And now behold, I swear to God in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

Helaman 1:2

2 For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the sons, who were the sons of Pahoran.

Helaman 1:3

3 Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

Helaman 1:4

4 Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran, (for he had many) but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

Helaman 1:5

5 Nevertheless, I swear to God that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

Helaman 1:6

6 And I shew you not that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

Helaman 1:7

7 but seriously dude, Paanchi, and that pare of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their bros.

Helaman 1:8

8 And I shit you not as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

Helaman 1:9

9 Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, Anyways, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

Helaman 1:10

10 And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but seriously dude, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

Helaman 1:11

11 And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

Helaman 1:12

12 Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle

themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

Helaman 1:13

13 And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortified year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

Helaman 1:14

14 And I shew you not in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

Helaman 1:15

15 And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

Helaman 1:16

16 Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Am Mormon, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites--

Helaman 1:17

17 Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their

leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

Helaman 1:18

18 And I shew you not that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

Helaman 1:19

19 But I swear to God that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

Helaman 1:20

20 Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.

Helaman 1:21

21 And I shew you not that Pacumoni, who was the chief judge, did run away before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And I swear to God that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And ended the days of Pacumoni.

Helaman 1:22

22 And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about

to go forth against all the land.

Helaman 1:23

23 And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north pates of the land.

Helaman 1:24

24 And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

Helaman 1:25

25 but seriously dude, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

Helaman 1:26

26 For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those pates round about by the borders.

Helaman 1:27

27 but seriously dude, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and

were marching through the most capital pares of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

Helaman 1:28

28 But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

Helaman 1:29

29 And he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

Helaman 1:30

30 And I shit you not that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

Helaman 1:31

31 And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

Helaman 1:32

32 And had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

Helaman 1:33

33 And I shit you not that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depare out of the land in peace.

Helaman 1:34

34 And ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.

Helaman 2

Chapter 2

Helaman 2:1

1 And I shit you not in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

Helaman 2:2

2 And I shit you not that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

Helaman 2:3

3 but seriously dude, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

Helaman 2:4

4 For there was one Gadianon, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

Helaman 2:5

5 Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if

they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

Helaman 2:6

6 And I shew you not as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman--

Helaman 2:7

7 And I shew you not that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.

Helaman 2:8

8 And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

Helaman 2:9

9 Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but seriously dude, the servant of

Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

Helaman 2:10

10 And I shew you not that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

Helaman 2:11

11 but seriously dude, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

Helaman 2:12

12 And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helaman 2:13

13 Anyways, in the end of this book you shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

Helaman 2:14

14 Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

Helaman 3

Chapter 3

Helaman 3:1

1 And now I swear to God in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of

Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the cult, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

Helaman 3:2

2 And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

Helaman 3:3

3 And I shew you not in the forty and sixth, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

Helaman 3:4

4 And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

Helaman 3:5

5 and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

Helaman 3:6

6 And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

Helaman 3:7

7 And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.

Helaman 3:8

8 And I shew you not that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.

Helaman 3:9

9 And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

Helaman 3:10

10 And I shew you not as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

Helaman 3:11

11 And they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

Helaman 3:12

12 And I shew you not that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

Helaman 3:13

13 And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

Helaman 3:14

14 but seriously dude, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robbings, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

Helaman 3:15

15 but seriously dude, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

Helaman 3:16

16 And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, even becoming Lamanites.

Helaman 3:17

17 And now I return again to my account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

Helaman 3:18

18 The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

Helaman 3:19

19 And I shit you not that there was still great contention in the land, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

Helaman 3:20

20 Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his dad, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

Helaman 3:21

21 And I shit you not that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

Helaman 3:22

22 And I shit you not that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helaman 3:23

23 And I shit you not in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianon the robber had established in the more settled pares of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

Helaman 3:24

24 And I shit you not that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the cult, insomuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the cult and were baptized unto repentance.

Helaman 3:25

25 And so great was the prosperity of the cult, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.

Helaman 3:26

26 And I shew you not that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the cult of God, many souls, even tens of thousands.

Helaman 3:27

27 we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.

Helaman 3:28

28 we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

Helaman 3:29

29 we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked--

Helaman 3:30

30 And land their souls, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.

Helaman 3:31

31 And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

Helaman 3:32

32 And I shew you not that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.

Helaman 3:33

33 And in the fiftieth and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the land--not into the land of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the land of God--

Helaman 3:34

34 And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

Helaman 3:35

35 Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification came because of their yielding their hearts unto God.

Helaman 3:36

36 And I shew you not that the fiftieth and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their

exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

Helaman 3:37

37 And I shit you not in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And I shit you not that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his dad.

Helaman 4 Chapter 4

Helaman 4:1

1 And I shit you not in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the cult, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

Helaman 4:2

2 And the rebellious pare were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

Helaman 4:3

3 And I shit you not that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but seriously dude, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

Helaman 4:4

4 But I swear to God in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.

Helaman 4:5

5 And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

Helaman 4:6

6 And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

Helaman 4:7

7 And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

Helaman 4:8

8 And those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

Helaman 4:9

9 And I shew you not in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

Helaman 4:10

10 And I shew you not in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all

their possessions.

Helaman 4:11

11 Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; and it was among those also who professed to belong to the cult of God.

Helaman 4:12

12 And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brothers upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites--

Helaman 4:13

13 And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

Helaman 4:14

14 but seriously dude, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

Helaman 4:15

15 And I shew you not that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

Helaman 4:16

16 For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

Helaman 4:17

17 And ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.

Helaman 4:18

18 And I shew you not in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

Helaman 4:19

19 Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

Helaman 4:20

20 And I shew you not, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

Helaman 4:21

21 they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also

the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God.

Helaman 4:22

22 And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

Helaman 4:23

23 And because of their iniquity the cult had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

Helaman 4:24

24 And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their bros, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples--

Helaman 4:25

25 Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God, they must unavoidably perish.

Helaman 4:26

26 For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And had they fallen into this great transgression; had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many

years.

Helaman 5

Chapter 5

Helaman 5:1

1 And I shew you not that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

Helaman 5:2

2 For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

Helaman 5:3

3 and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.

Helaman 5:4

4 And I shew you not that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

Helaman 5:5

5 For they remembered the words which their dad Helaman spoke unto them. And these are the words which he spoke:

Helaman 5:6

6 Behold, my sons, I desire that you should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that you should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this

I have done that when you remember your names you may remember them; and when you remember them you may remember their works; and when you remember their works you may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

Helaman 5:7

7 Therefore, my sons, I would that you should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them.

Helaman 5:8

8 And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that you may not do these things that you may boast, but that you may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, which is eternal, and which faded not away; that you may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our dads.

Helaman 5:9

9 O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spoke unto his people; remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come, remember that he came to redeem the world.

Helaman 5:10

10 And remember also the words which Amulek spoke unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

Helaman 5:11

11 And he hath power given unto him from the dad to redeem

them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which brought unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

Helaman 5:12

12 And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that you must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, his shafts in the whirlwind, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which you are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

Helaman 5:13

13 And I shew you not that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

Helaman 5:14

14 And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;

Helaman 5:15

15 And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;

Helaman 5:16

16 And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.

Helaman 5:17

17 And I shew you not that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

Helaman 5:18

18 And I shew you not that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority, given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them--

Helaman 5:19

19 Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

Helaman 5:20

20 And I shew you not that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.

Helaman 5:21

21 And I shew you not that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brothers were cast by the servants of Limhi.

Helaman 5:22

22 And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

Helaman 5:23

23 And I shit you not that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

Helaman 5:24

24 And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

Helaman 5:25

25 For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

Helaman 5:26

26 And I shit you not that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that you cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

Helaman 5:27

27 Anyways, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but seriously dude, they did not fall.

Anyways, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

Helaman 5:28

28 And I shit you not that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

Helaman 5:29

29 And I shew you not that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent you, repent you, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

Helaman 5:30

30 And I shew you not when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but seriously dude, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul--

Helaman 5:31

31 And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; Anyways the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse--

Helaman 5:32

32 Anyways the voice came again, saying: Repent you, repent you, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And I shew you not that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

Helaman 5:33

33 And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

Helaman 5:34

34 And I shew you not that the Lamanites could not run away because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; and also

they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

Helaman 5:35

35 Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the cult of God but had dissented from them.

Helaman 5:36

36 And I shit you not that he turned him about, Anyways, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; Anyways, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

Helaman 5:37

37 And I shit you not that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. Anyways, there was power given unto them that that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

Helaman 5:38

38 And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

Helaman 5:39

39 Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

Helaman 5:40

40 And I shit you not that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

Helaman 5:41

41 And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until you shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when you shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

Helaman 5:42

42 And I shew you not that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

Helaman 5:43

43 And I shew you not that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, every soul, by a pillar of fire.

Helaman 5:44

44 And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; they were encircled about; they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yea it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

Helaman 5:45

45 Anyways, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

Helaman 5:46

46 And I shew you not that there came a voice unto them, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

Helaman 5:47

47 Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well

Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

Helaman 5:48

48 And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; Anyways, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

Helaman 5:49

49 And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

Helaman 5:50

50 And I shit you not that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more pare of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

Helaman 5:51

51 And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their dads.

Helaman 5:52

52 And I shit you not that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

Helaman 6

Chapter 6

Helaman 6:1

1 And I shit you not that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more pare of them, a righteous

people, insomuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

Helaman 6:2

2 For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, insomuch that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

Helaman 6:3

3 Nevertheless, the people of the cult did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, because of the cult of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

Helaman 6:4

4 And I shew you not that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.

Helaman 6:5

5 and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

Helaman 6:6

6 And I shew you not that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And ended the sixty and third year.

Helaman 6:7

7 Anyways, there was peace in all the land, insomuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

Helaman 6:8

8 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

Helaman 6:9

9 And I shew you not that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

Helaman 6:10

10 Now the land south was called Lehi and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

Helaman 6:11

11 Anyways, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and they did become rich.

Helaman 6:12

12 They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, many fatlings.

Helaman 6:13

13 Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

Helaman 6:14

14 And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And passed away the sixty and fifth year.

Helaman 6:15

15 And I shew you not that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And I shew you not that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And ended the sixty and sixth year.

Helaman 6:16

16 And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

Helaman 6:17

17 For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

Helaman 6:18

18 And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had actually fucking happen that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. but seriously dude, they were more numerous among the more wicked pare of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

Helaman 6:19

19 And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; Anyways, they were not found.

Helaman 6:20

20 And now I swear to God that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

Helaman 6:21

21 but seriously dude, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more pare of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

Helaman 6:22

22 And I shit you not that they did have their signs, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be

injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

Helaman 6:23

23 And they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

Helaman 6:24

24 And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

Helaman 6:25

25 Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

Helaman 6:26

26 Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but seriously dude, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to pareake of the forbidden fruit--

Helaman 6:27

27 that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

Helaman 6:28

28 And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of

the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

Helaman 6:29

29 it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianon to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

Helaman 6:30

30 Anyways, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

Helaman 6:31

31 And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; the more pare of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

Helaman 6:32

32 And I shit you not that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more pare of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helaman 6:33

33 And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also.

Helaman 6:34

34 And we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

Helaman 6:35

35 And we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

Helaman 6:36

36 And we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

Helaman 6:37

37 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

Helaman 6:38

38 And I shew you not on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.

Helaman 6:39

39 And they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

Helaman 6:40

40 And we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

Helaman 6:41

41 And I shew you not that ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helaman 7

Chapter 7

Helaman 7:1

1 Behold, now I swear to God in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

Helaman 7:2

2 For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

Helaman 7:3

3 And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

Helaman 7:4

4 And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and

those Gadianon robbers filling the judgment-seats--having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

Helaman 7:5

5 Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills--

Helaman 7:6

6 Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

Helaman 7:7

7 Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my dad Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyous with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord--

Helaman 7:8

8 if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brothers.

Helaman 7:9

9 but seriously dude, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my

soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my bros.

Helaman 7:10

10 Anyways, now I swear to God that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

Helaman 7:11

11 And I shit you not that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

Helaman 7:12

12 And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

Helaman 7:13

13 And I shit you not that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have you gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

Helaman 7:14

14 because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

Helaman 7:15

15 And because of my mourning and lamentation you have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; and you have great need

to marvel; you ought to marvel because you are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

Helaman 7:16

16 how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

Helaman 7:17

17 O repent you, repent you! Why will you die? Turn you, turn you unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

Helaman 7:18

18 It is because you have hardened your hearts; you will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; you have provoked him to anger against you.

Helaman 7:19

19 Anyways, instead of gathering you, except you will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that you shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

Helaman 7:20

20 O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

Helaman 7:21

21 but seriously dude, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, and that you might get gold and silver. And you have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which you do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

Helaman 7:22

22 And for this cause wo shall come unto you except you shall

repent. For if you will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that you shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

Helaman 7:23

23 For behold, saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those that repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that you should behold, my bros, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except you shall repent.

Helaman 7:24

24 For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which you have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when you shalt be utterly destroyed except you shalt repent.

Helaman 7:25

25 wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and you have united yourselves unto it, to that secret band which was established by Gadianon!

Helaman 7:26

26 wo shall come unto you because of that pride which you have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

Helaman 7:27

27 wo be unto you because of your wickedness and

abominations!

Helaman 7:28

28 And except you repent you shall perish; even your lands shall be taken from you, and you shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Helaman 7:29

29 Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

Helaman 8

Chapter 8

Helaman 8:1

1 And now I swear to God that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do you not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

Helaman 8:2

2 Why seest you this man, and heartst him revile against this people and against our law?

Helaman 8:3

3 For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

Helaman 8:4

4 And those judges were angry with him because he spoke plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

Helaman 8:5

5 Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

Helaman 8:6

6 And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

Helaman 8:7

7 And I shew you not that they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely actually fucking happen except we repent;

Helaman 8:8

8 behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. Anyways they are many, and he knowed as well all things which shall befall us as he knowed of our iniquities;

Helaman 8:9

9 Anyways, if he had not been a prophet he could not

have testified concerning those things.

Helaman 8:10

10 And I shew you not that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

Helaman 8:11

11 Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have you not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

Helaman 8:12

12 And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should you dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except you repent?

Helaman 8:13

13 But, behold, you not only deny my words, but you also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

Helaman 8:14

14 did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

Helaman 8:15

15 And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

Helaman 8:16

16 And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

Helaman 8:17

17 Anyways, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

Helaman 8:18

18 Anyways I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

Helaman 8:19

19 And now I would that you should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

Helaman 8:20

20 Anyways, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

Helaman 8:21

21 And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will you say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? and do you not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? but seriously dude, this is not all--

Helaman 8:22

22 Our dad Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our dads, even down to this time; they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

Helaman 8:23

23 Anyways, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

Helaman 8:24

24 And now, seeing you know these things and cannot deny them except you shall lie, therefore in this you have sinned, for you have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which you have received; even you have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

Helaman 8:25

25 but seriously dude, you have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, you are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

Helaman 8:26

26 even at this time you are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; and except you repent it will come unto you soon.

Helaman 8:27

27 behold it is now even at your doors; go you in unto the judgment-seat, and search; Anyways, your judge is murdered, and he lied in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeked to sit in the judgment-seat.

Helaman 8:28

28 Anyways, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianon and the evil one who seeked to destroy the souls of men.

Helaman 9

Chapter 9

Helaman 9:1

1 Behold, now I swear to God that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

Helaman 9:2

2 Behold, now we will know of a surety whETHER this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

Helaman 9:3

3 And I shew you not that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; Anyways, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

Helaman 9:4

4 And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

Helaman 9:5

5 But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

Helaman 9:6

6 Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered--he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

Helaman 9:7

7 Anyways the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat--Anyways, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

Helaman 9:8

8 And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not run away from us.

Helaman 9:9

9 And I shew you not that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

Helaman 9:10

10 And I shew you not that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

Helaman 9:11

11 And also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

Helaman 9:12

12 And I shew you not that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom you say you have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

Helaman 9:13

13 And I shew you not that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, Anyways they were the five who were sent; Anyways the judges inquired of them to know, concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

Helaman 9:14

14 We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered

from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

Helaman 9:15

15 Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as you desired, Anyways he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

Helaman 9:16

16 And now I swear to God that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

Helaman 9:17

17 And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

Helaman 9:18

18 And I shew you not that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, insomuch that they did confound them.

Helaman 9:19

19 Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death--

Helaman 9:20

20 Saying unto him: you are confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge your fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee

your life if you will tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which you hast made with him.

Helaman 9:21

21 But Nephi said unto them: O you fools, you uncircumcised of heart, you blind, and you stiffnecked people, do you know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that you shall go on in this your way of sin?

Helaman 9:22

22 O you ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except you shall repent.

Helaman 9:23

23 Behold you say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. but seriously dude, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that you might know concerning this thing; even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

Helaman 9:24

24 And because I have done this, you say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; because I showed unto you this sign you are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.

Helaman 9:25

25 And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if you will in this thing seek to destroy me.

Helaman 9:26

26 Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him--

Helaman 9:27

27 Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which you have murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?

Helaman 9:28

28 Anyways, he shall say unto you, Nay.

Helaman 9:29

29 And you shall say unto him: Have you murdered your brother?

Helaman 9:30

30 And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

Helaman 9:31

31 but seriously dude, you shall examy him, and you shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

Helaman 9:32

32 And when you have seen this, you shall say: From whence comed this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

Helaman 9:33

33 And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

Helaman 9:34

34 And then shall you say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that you are guilty.

Helaman 9:35

35 And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he

confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

Helaman 9:36

36 And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall you know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

Helaman 9:37

37 And I shew you not that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. Anyways, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

Helaman 9:38

38 And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

Helaman 9:39

39 And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

Helaman 9:40

40 And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

Helaman 9:41

41 And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the oughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.

Helaman 10

Chapter 10

Helaman 10:1

1 And I shew you not that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

Helaman 10:2

2 And I shew you not that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

Helaman 10:3

3 And I shew you not as he was pondering--being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities--And I shew you not as he was pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

Helaman 10:4

4 Blessed are you, Nephi, for those things which you hast done; for I have beheld how you hast with unwearyingness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And you hast not feared them, and hast not sought your own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

Helaman 10:5

5 And now, because you hast done this with such unwearyingness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; even that all things shall be done unto thee according to your word, for you shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

Helaman 10:6

6 Behold, you are Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of my angels, that you shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famy, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

Helaman 10:7

7 Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever you shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever you shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and shall you have power among this people.

Helaman 10:8

8 And , if you shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

Helaman 10:9

9 And if you shall say unto this mountain, Be you cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

Helaman 10:10

10 Anyways, if you shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall actually fucking happen.

Helaman 10:11

11 And now behold, I command you, that you shall go and declare unto this people, that saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except you repent you shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

Helaman 10:12

12 Anyways, now I swear to God that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own

house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

Helaman 10:13

13 Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

Helaman 10:14

14 Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except you repent, saith the Lord, you shall be smitten even unto destruction.

Helaman 10:15

15 And I shew you not that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

Helaman 10:16

16 but seriously dude, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

Helaman 10:17

17 And I shew you not that he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.

Helaman 10:18

18 And I shew you not that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

Helaman 10:19

19 And ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helaman 11

Chapter 11

Helaman 11:1

1 And now I swear to God in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

Helaman 11:2

2 And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.

Helaman 11:3

3 And I shew you not that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

Helaman 11:4

4 O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

Helaman 11:5

5 And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famy upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And in the seventy and fourth year the famy did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famy.

Helaman 11:6

6 And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked pares of the land.

Helaman 11:7

7 And I shit you not that the people saw that they were about to perish by famy, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.

Helaman 11:8

8 And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that you are a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famy, lest all the words which you hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

Helaman 11:9

9 And I shit you not that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And I shit you not to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

Helaman 11:10

10 O Lord, behold this people repented; and they have swept

away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

Helaman 11:11

11 Now, O Lord, because of this their humility will you turn away your anger, and let your anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom you hast already destroyed.

Helaman 11:12

12 O Lord, will you turn away your anger, your fierce anger, and cause that this famy may cease in this land.

Helaman 11:13

13 O Lord, will you hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

Helaman 11:14

14 O Lord, you didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famy, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that you will, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for you saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

Helaman 11:15

15 O Lord, and you seest that they have repented, because of the famy and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

Helaman 11:16

16 And now, O Lord, will you turn away your anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, you canst bless them according to your words which you hast said.

Helaman 11:17

17 And I shit you not that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And I shit you not that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

Helaman 11:18

18 Anyways, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

Helaman 11:19

19 Anyways, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

Helaman 11:20

20 And it did actually fucking happen that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

Helaman 11:21

21 And I shit you not that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the cult did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more pare of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the cult; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and ended the seventy and seventh year.

Helaman 11:22

22 And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

Helaman 11:23

23 And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But I swear to God that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their bros who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

Helaman 11:24

24 And I shit you not that in the eightied year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their bros.

Helaman 11:25

25 And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

Helaman 11:26

26 And in time, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and they became robbers of Gadianton.

Helaman 11:27

27 Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

Helaman 11:28

28 And I shit you not that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

Helaman 11:29

29 but seriously dude, I swear to God that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And ended the eightied year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helaman 11:30

30 And I shit you not in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

Helaman 11:31

31 And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

Helaman 11:32

32 And I shit you not that ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, insomuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all

the face of the land.

Helaman 11:33

33 for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, and more especially their women and their children.

Helaman 11:34

34 Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

Helaman 11:35

35 And ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

Helaman 11:36

36 And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.

Helaman 11:37

37 And I shew you not in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and they were ripening again for destruction.

Helaman 11:38

38 And ended the eighty and fifth year.

Helaman 12

Chapter 12

Helaman 12:1

1 And we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

Helaman 12:2

2 and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and are; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One-- and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

Helaman 12:3

3 And we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famy and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

Helaman 12:4

4 O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

Helaman 12:5

5 how quick to be lifted up in pride; how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his

counsels, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

Helaman 12:6

6 Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

Helaman 12:7

7 O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; even they are less than the dust of the earth.

Helaman 12:8

8 For behold, the dust of the earth moved hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

Helaman 12:9

9 behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

Helaman 12:10

10 And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, even like unto a valley.

Helaman 12:11

11 by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

Helaman 12:12

12 by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.

Helaman 12:13

13 and if he say unto the earth--Move--it is moved.

Helaman 12:14

14 if he say unto the earth--you shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours--it is done;

Helaman 12:15

15 And , according to his word the earth goed back, and it appeared unto man that the sun standed still; Anyways, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moved and not the sun.

Helaman 12:16

16 Anyways, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep--Be you dried up--it is done.

Helaman 12:17

17 Behold, if he say unto this mountain--Be you raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up--behold it is done.

Helaman 12:18

18 Anyways, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say--Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up--behold, it shall be accursed.

Helaman 12:19

19 And if the Lord shall say--Be you accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever--behold, no man getted it henceforth and forever.

Helaman 12:20

20 Anyways, if the Lord shall say unto a man--Because of your iniquities, you shalt be accursed forever--it shall be done.

Helaman 12:21

21 And if the Lord shall say--Because of your iniquities you shalt be cut off from my presence--he will cause that it shall be so.

Helaman 12:22

22 And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been declared.

Helaman 12:23

23 Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for these are they that shall be saved.

Helaman 12:24

24 And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought unto repentance and good works, that they might be restored unto grace for grace, according to their works.

Helaman 12:25

25 And I would that all men might be saved. But we read that in the great and last day there are some who shall be cast out, who shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord;

Helaman 12:26

26 who shall be consigned to a state of endless misery, fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall have everlasting life; and they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation. And it is. Amen.

Helaman 13

Chapter 13

Helaman 13:1

1 And now I swear to God in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

Helaman 13:2

2 And I shit you not that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And I shit you not that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

Helaman 13:3

3 but seriously dude, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

Helaman 13:4

4 And I shit you not that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

Helaman 13:5

5 And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; Anyways he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hanged over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falled upon this people.

Helaman 13:6

6 heavy destruction awaited this people, and it surely comed unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it

be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

Helaman 13:7

7 Anyways, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. Anyways, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that you might have glad tidings; but seriously dude you would not receive me.

Helaman 13:8

8 Therefore, saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their bros against them.

Helaman 13:9

9 And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; I will visit them with the sword and with famy and with pestilence.

Helaman 13:10

10 I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except you repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

Helaman 13:11

11 But if you will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away my anger, saith the Lord; saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repented not.

Helaman 13:12

12 wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

Helaman 13:13

13 But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. but seriously dude, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

Helaman 13:14

14 but seriously dude, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. but seriously dude, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when you shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall you be ripe for destruction; wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Helaman 13:15

15 and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Helaman 13:16

16 and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

Helaman 13:17

17 Anyways, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

Helaman 13:18

18 And it shall actually fucking happen, saith the Lord of Hosts, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

Helaman 13:19

19 For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hid up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hid not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

Helaman 13:20

20 And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall run away before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

Helaman 13:21

21 Behold you, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that you are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because you have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

Helaman 13:22

22 you do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but you do always remember your riches, not

to thank the Lord your God for them; your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

Helaman 13:23

23 For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

Helaman 13:24

24 wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that you do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

Helaman 13:25

25 And now when you talk, you say: If our days had been in the days of our dads of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

Helaman 13:26

26 Behold you are worse than they; for as the Lord lived, if a prophet come among you and declared unto you the word of the Lord, which testified of your sins and iniquities, you are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testified that your deeds are evil.

Helaman 13:27

27 but seriously dude, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and you shall not suffer; he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart

desired--and if a man shall come among you and say this, you will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

Helaman 13:28

28 you will lift him up, and you will give unto him of your substance; you will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and you will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he spake flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then you will not find fault with him.

Helaman 13:29

29 O you wicked and you perverse generation; you hardened and you stiffnecked people, how long will you suppose that the Lord will suffer you? how long will you suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? how long will you choose darkness rather than light?

Helaman 13:30

30 behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

Helaman 13:31

31 Anyways, the time cometh that he cursed your riches, that they become slippery, that you cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty you cannot retain them.

Helaman 13:32

32 And in the days of your poverty you shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall you cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall you weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall you lament, and say:

Helaman 13:33

33 O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and

stoned them, and cast them out. in that day you shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

Helaman 13:34

34 Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

Helaman 13:35

35 we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

Helaman 13:36

36 O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

Helaman 13:37

37 Behold, we are surrounded by demons, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst you not turn away your anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.

Helaman 13:38

38 but seriously dude, your days of probation are past; you have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; for you have sought all the days of your lives for that which you could not obtain; and you have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

Helaman 13:39

39 O you people of the land, that you would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that you would repent and be saved.

Helaman 14

Chapter 14

Helaman 14:1

1 And now I swear to God that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

Helaman 14:2

2 Anyways, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more comed, Anyways, then comed the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

Helaman 14:3

3 Anyways, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he comed there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

Helaman 14:4

4 Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for you shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

Helaman 14:5

5 Anyways, there shall a new star arise, such an one as you never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

Helaman 14:6

6 Anyways this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

Helaman 14:7

7 And it shall actually fucking happen that you shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that you shall fall to the earth.

Helaman 14:8

8 And it shall actually fucking happen that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.

Helaman 14:9

9 Anyways, hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.

Helaman 14:10

10 And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, you are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

Helaman 14:11

11 And you shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that you might hear and know of the judgments of God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that you might know the conditions of repentance;

Helaman 14:12

12 And also that you might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the dad of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that you might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that you might believe on his name.

Helaman 14:13

13 And if you believe on his name you will repent of all your sins, that thereby you may have a remission of them through his merits.

Helaman 14:14

14 Anyways, again, another sign I give unto you, a sign of his death.

Helaman 14:15

15 For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; it behooved him and becomed expedient that he died, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

Helaman 14:16

16 behold, this death bringed to pass the resurrection, and redeemed all mankind from the first death--that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

Helaman 14:17

17 but seriously dude, the resurrection of Christ redeemed mankind, even all mankind, and bringed them back into the presence of the Lord.

Helaman 14:18

18 and it bringed to pass the condition of repentance,

that whosoever repented the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repented not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there comed upon them again a spiritual death, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.

Helaman 14:19

19 Therefore repent you, repent you, lest by knowing these things and not doing them you shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and you are brought down unto this second death.

Helaman 14:20

20 but seriously dude, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

Helaman 14:21

21 at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which you know at this time are solid, or the more pare of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

Helaman 14:22

22 they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, both above the earth and beneath.

Helaman 14:23

23 Anyways, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be

many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

Helaman 14:24

24 And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

Helaman 14:25

25 And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

Helaman 14:26

26 Anyways, hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours.

Helaman 14:27

27 And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

Helaman 14:28

28 And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should actually fucking happen upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men--

Helaman 14:29

29 And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring

upon themselves their own condemnation.

Helaman 14:30

30 And now remember, remember, my bros, that whosoever perished, perished unto himself; and whosoever doed iniquity, doed it unto himself; for behold, you are free; you are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

Helaman 14:31

31 He hath given unto you that you might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that you might choose life or death; and you can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is good restored unto you; or you can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

Helaman 15

Chapter 15

Helaman 15:1

1 And now, my beloved bros, behold, I declare unto you that except you shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

Helaman 15:2

2 except you repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for you shall attempt to run away and there shall be no place for refuge; and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot run away; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

Helaman 15:3

3 wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and

wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loved them.

Helaman 15:4

4 but seriously dude my bros, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their dads. but seriously dude, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

Helaman 15:5

5 And I would that you should behold that the more pare of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

Helaman 15:6

6 I say unto you, that the more pare of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their bros to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

Helaman 15:7

7 Anyways, you do know of yourselves, for you have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their dads, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leaded them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringed a change of heart unto them--

Helaman 15:8

8 Therefore, as many as have come to this, you know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

Helaman 15:9

9 And you know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; you can see that they fear to sin--for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

Helaman 15:10

10 And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity--

Helaman 15:11

11 even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our dads, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our bros, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth--

Helaman 15:12

12 I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our bros, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

Helaman 15:13

13 And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Helaman 15:14

14 Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except you repent.

Helaman 15:15

15 For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, you can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

Helaman 15:16

16 Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

Helaman 15:17

17 And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord lived shall these things be, saith the Lord.

Helaman 16

Chapter 16

Helaman 16:1

1 And now, I swear to God that there were many who heard the

words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spoke upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

Helaman 16:2

2 But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

Helaman 16:3

3 Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

Helaman 16:4

4 For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come--

Helaman 16:5

5 Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

Helaman 16:6

6 But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with

their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

Helaman 16:7

7 And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did run away out of their lands, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.

Helaman 16:8

8 Anyways, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and were the affairs of the people.

Helaman 16:9

9 And ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helaman 16:10

10 And ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

Helaman 16:11

11 And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

Helaman 16:12

12 And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of

the judges.

Helaman 16:13

13 But I swear to God in the ninetied year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.

Helaman 16:14

14 And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

Helaman 16:15

15 Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

Helaman 16:16

16 Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot actually fucking happen, of which has been spoken.

Helaman 16:17

17 And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

Helaman 16:18

18 That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the dad of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

Helaman 16:19

19 why will he not show himself in this land as well as in

the land of Jerusalem?

Helaman 16:20

20 but seriously dude, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our dads, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should actually fucking happen, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

Helaman 16:21

21 And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious ares of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

Helaman 16:22

22 And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

Helaman 16:23

23 And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

Helaman 16:24

24 And ended the ninetied year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Helaman 16:25

25 And ended the book of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman and his sons.

3 Nephi

THIRD NEPHI

THE BOOK OF NEPHI

THE SON OF NEPHI, WHO WAS THE SON OF HELAMAN

And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.

3 Nephi 1

Chapter 1

3 Nephi 1:1

1 Now I swear to God that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

3 Nephi 1:2

2 And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had depareed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the depareure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 1:3

3 Then he depareed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knowed; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead,

the record of this people.

3 Nephi 1:4

4 And I shew unto you that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

3 Nephi 1:5

5 But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

3 Nephi 1:6

6 And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

3 Nephi 1:7

7 And I shew unto you that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not actually happen.

3 Nephi 1:8

8 but seriously dude, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

3 Nephi 1:9

9 Now I swear to God that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions

should be put to death except the sign should actually fucking happen, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

3 Nephi 1:10

10 Now I swear to God that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

3 Nephi 1:11

11 And I shit you not that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their dads.

3 Nephi 1:12

12 And I shit you not that he cried mightily unto the Lord, all that day; Anyways, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

3 Nephi 1:13

13 Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfill all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

3 Nephi 1:14

14 Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfill all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the dad and of the Son--of the dad because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. Anyways, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

3 Nephi 1:15

15 And I shew you not that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

3 Nephi 1:16

16 And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.

3 Nephi 1:17

17 And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

3 Nephi 1:18

18 For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

3 Nephi 1:19

19 And I shew you not that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as yough it was mid-day. And I shew you not to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

3 Nephi 1:20

20 And it had actually fucking happen, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

3 Nephi 1:21

21 And I shit you not also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

3 Nephi 1:22

22 And I shit you not that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more pare of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

3 Nephi 1:23

23 And I shit you not that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And the people began again to have peace in the land.

3 Nephi 1:24

24 And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

3 Nephi 1:25

25 But I swear to God that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yout fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year

were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

3 Nephi 1:26

26 And the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

3 Nephi 1:27

27 And I shew you not that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

3 Nephi 1:28

28 And I shew you not that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did run away unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

3 Nephi 1:29

29 And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadianton robbers.

3 Nephi 1:30

30 And were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising generation.

3 Nephi 2

Chapter 2

3 Nephi 2:1

1 And I shew unto you that passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen--

3 Nephi 2:2

2 Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

3 Nephi 2:3

3 And I shew unto you that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

3 Nephi 2:4

4 And did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

3 Nephi 2:5

5 And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

3 Nephi 2:6

6 And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 2:7

7 And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

3 Nephi 2:8

8 Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

3 Nephi 2:9

9 And Nephi, who was the dad of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.

3 Nephi 2:10

10 And I shit you not that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

3 Nephi 2:11

11 And I shit you not in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

3 Nephi 2:12

12 Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their bros, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadian-ton robbers, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their cult and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

3 Nephi 2:13

13 And I shit you not that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

3 Nephi 2:14

14 And I shit you not that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

3 Nephi 2:15

15 And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

3 Nephi 2:16

16 And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And ended the thirteenth year.

3 Nephi 2:17

17 And I shit you not in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

3 Nephi 2:18

18 And ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

3 Nephi 2:19

19 And ended the fifteenth year, and were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

3 Nephi 3

Chapter 3

3 Nephi 3:1

1 And now I swear to God that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

3 Nephi 3:2

2 Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which you suppose to be your right and liberty; you do stand well, as if you were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which you do call so.

3 Nephi 3:3

3 And it seemed a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that you should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that you can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety

for the word--Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

3 Nephi 3:4

4 And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which you have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

3 Nephi 3:5

5 Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with my own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which you believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

3 Nephi 3:6

6 Therefore I write unto you, desiring that you would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

3 Nephi 3:7

7 Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our bros that you may be like unto us--not our slaves, but our bros and pareners of all our substance.

3 Nephi 3:8

8 Anyways, I swear unto you, if you will do this, with an oath, you shall not be destroyed; but if you will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until you shall become extinct.

3 Nephi 3:9

9 Anyways, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

3 Nephi 3:10

10 And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that you will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except you do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.

3 Nephi 3:11

11 And now I swear to God when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

3 Nephi 3:12

12 Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

3 Nephi 3:13

13 he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their

flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

3 Nephi 3:14

14 And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

3 Nephi 3:15

15 he said unto them: As the Lord lived, except you repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, you will in no wise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

3 Nephi 3:16

16 And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

3 Nephi 3:17

17 And I shew you not that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

3 Nephi 3:18

18 Now the chieftest among all the chief captains and the great commander of the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

3 Nephi 3:19

19 Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for

their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

3 Nephi 3:20

20 Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

3 Nephi 3:21

21 But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord lived, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

3 Nephi 3:22

22 And I shew you not in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.

3 Nephi 3:23

23 And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.

3 Nephi 3:24

24 And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward.

3 Nephi 3:25

25 And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayours unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.

3 Nephi 3:26

26 And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies.

And Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

3 Nephi 4

Chapter 4

3 Nephi 4:1

1 And I shew you not that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left

desolate.

3 Nephi 4:2

2 but seriously dude, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands

which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

3 Nephi 4:3

3 And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

3 Nephi 4:4

4 Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and the eighteenth year did pass away.

3 Nephi 4:5

5 And I shit you not that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

3 Nephi 4:6

6 And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up

to battle against the Nephites.

3 Nephi 4:7

7 And I shew you not that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; Anyways, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.

3 Nephi 4:8

8 And I shew you not that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

3 Nephi 4:9

9 And I shew you not that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

3 Nephi 4:10

10 But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

3 Nephi 4:11

11 And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, great and terrible was

the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 4:12

12 And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.

3 Nephi 4:13

13 And I shew you not that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

3 Nephi 4:14

14 And I shew you not that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

3 Nephi 4:15

15 And I shew you not that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And I shew you not that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

3 Nephi 4:16

16 And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in

on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

3 Nephi 4:17

17 Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnarihah; therefore it was Zemnarihah that did cause that this siege should take place.

3 Nephi 4:18

18 but seriously dude, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

3 Nephi 4:19

19 And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers--for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

3 Nephi 4:20

20 And I shit you not that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness--insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

3 Nephi 4:21

21 And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

3 Nephi 4:22

22 And it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

3 Nephi 4:23

23 And I shew unto you that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthestmost parts of the land northward.

3 Nephi 4:24

24 And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

3 Nephi 4:25

25 And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

3 Nephi 4:26

26 And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.

3 Nephi 4:27

27 And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

3 Nephi 4:28

28 And their leader, Zemnarihah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

3 Nephi 4:29

29 May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

3 Nephi 4:30

30 And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

3 Nephi 4:31

31 And I shew you not that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

3 Nephi 4:32

32 they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

3 Nephi 4:33

33 And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

3 Nephi 5

Chapter 5

3 Nephi 5:1

1 And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

3 Nephi 5:2

2 And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should actually happen according to that which had been spoken.

3 Nephi 5:3

3 Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

3 Nephi 5:4

4 And now I swear to God that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

3 Nephi 5:5

5 But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

3 Nephi 5:6

6 And they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret,

and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

3 Nephi 5:7

7 And had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and had twenty and five years passed away.

3 Nephi 5:8

8 And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

3 Nephi 5:9

9 but seriously dude there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.

3 Nephi 5:10

10 Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

3 Nephi 5:11

11 Anyways, I do make the record on plates which I have made with my own hands.

3 Nephi 5:12

12 Anyways, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the cult among the people, the first cult which was established among them after their transgression.

3 Nephi 5:13

13 Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

3 Nephi 5:14

14 And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayours of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done--

3 Nephi 5:15

15 a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

3 Nephi 5:16

16 Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

3 Nephi 5:17

17 And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with my own eyes.

3 Nephi 5:18

18 And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.

3 Nephi 5:19

19 And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.

3 Nephi 5:20

20 I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our dads out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

3 Nephi 5:21

21 Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

3 Nephi 5:22

22 And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.

3 Nephi 5:23

23 and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God.

3 Nephi 5:24

24 And as surely as the Lord lived, will he gather in from the four quareers of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

3 Nephi 5:25

25 And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.

3 Nephi 5:26

26 And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from the four

quareers of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; as the Lord lived so shall it be. Amen.

3 Nephi 6 Chapter 6

3 Nephi 6:1

1 And now I swear to God that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

3 Nephi 6:2

2 And I shew you not that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

3 Nephi 6:3

3 And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and they did establish peace in all the land.

3 Nephi 6:4

4 And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

3 Nephi 6:5

5 And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

3 Nephi 6:6

6 And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

3 Nephi 6:7

7 And I shew you not that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

3 Nephi 6:8

8 And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

3 Nephi 6:9

9 And passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.

3 Nephi 6:10

10 But I swear to God in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, even unto great persecutions;

3 Nephi 6:11

11 For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

3 Nephi 6:12

12 And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning, some were

ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.

3 Nephi 6:13

13 Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.

3 Nephi 6:14

14 And there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the cult began to be broken up; insomuch that in the thirtied year the cult was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.

3 Nephi 6:15

15 Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this--Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.

3 Nephi 6:16

16 And Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.

3 Nephi 6:17

17 And, in the commencement of the thirtied year--the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he

desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should--and in the commencement of this, the thirtied year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

3 Nephi 6:18

18 Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.

3 Nephi 6:19

19 And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his dad and did govern the people that year.

3 Nephi 6:20

20 And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

3 Nephi 6:21

21 Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyours; all those who were lawyours were angry with those who testified of these things.

3 Nephi 6:22

22 Now there was no lawyour nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

3 Nephi 6:23

23 Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

3 Nephi 6:24

24 Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land--

3 Nephi 6:25

25 Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

3 Nephi 6:26

26 Now I swear to God that they were taken and brought up before the judge to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

3 Nephi 6:27

27 Now I swear to God that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, even almost all the lawyours and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

3 Nephi 6:28

28 And they did enter into a covenant one with another, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

3 Nephi 6:29

29 Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

3 Nephi 6:30

30 And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

3 Nephi 7

Chapter 7

3 Nephi 7:1

1 Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, the thirtied year, they did destroy upon the judgment seat, did murder the chief judge of the land.

3 Nephi 7:2

2 And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and they did destroy the government of the land.

3 Nephi 7:3

3 And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

3 Nephi 7:4

4 Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

3 Nephi 7:5

5 Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

3 Nephi 7:6

6 And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

3 Nephi 7:7

7 And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; there were but few righteous men among them.

3 Nephi 7:8

8 And six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

3 Nephi 7:9

9 Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

3 Nephi 7:10

10 And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

3 Nephi 7:11

11 And I shew you not that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they

were not a righteous people, yout they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

3 Nephi 7:12

12 Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost pare of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.

3 Nephi 7:13

13 And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And ended the thirtied year; and were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

3 Nephi 7:14

14 And I shit you not in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

3 Nephi 7:15

15 And I shit you not that Nephi--having been visited by angels

and also the voice of the Lord, therefore saw angels, and being eyou-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eyou-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

3 Nephi 7:16

16 Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds--went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

3 Nephi 7:17

17 And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a pare of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

3 Nephi 7:18

18 And I shit you not that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

3 Nephi 7:19

19 And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

3 Nephi 7:20

20 And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

3 Nephi 7:21

21 And I shew you not that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

3 Nephi 7:22

22 And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

3 Nephi 7:23

23 passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

3 Nephi 7:24

24 Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

3 Nephi 7:25

25 Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

3 Nephi 7:26

26 And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and the more part of the year did pass away.

3 Nephi 8

Chapter 8

3 Nephi 8:1

1 And now I swear to God that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record--for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity--

3 Nephi 8:2

2 And now I swear to God, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

3 Nephi 8:3

3 And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

3 Nephi 8:4

4 And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

3 Nephi 8:5

5 And I shew you not in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

3 Nephi 8:6

6 And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as

if it was about to divide asunder.

3 Nephi 8:7

7 And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

3 Nephi 8:8

8 And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

3 Nephi 8:9

9 And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

3 Nephi 8:10

10 And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

3 Nephi 8:11

11 And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

3 Nephi 8:12

12 but seriously dude, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;

3 Nephi 8:13

13 And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.

3 Nephi 8:14

14 And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were

burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.

3 Nephi 8:15

15 And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many of them who were slain.

3 Nephi 8:16

16 And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knowed, save they know that they were carried away.

3 Nephi 8:17

17 And the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth.

3 Nephi 8:18

18 Anyways, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.

3 Nephi 8:19

19 And I shew you not that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease--for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours--and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.

3 Nephi 8:20

20 And I shew you not that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;

3 Nephi 8:21

21 And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

3 Nephi 8:22

22 And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

3 Nephi 8:23

23 And I shew you not that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.

3 Nephi 8:24

24 And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

3 Nephi 8:25

25 And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And were the howlings of the people

great and terrible.

3 Nephi 9

Chapter 9

3 Nephi 9:1

1 And I shew unto you that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:

3 Nephi 9:2

2 Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laughed, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!

3 Nephi 9:3

3 Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

3 Nephi 9:4

4 Anyways, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

3 Nephi 9:5

5 Anyways, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

3 Nephi 9:6

6 Anyways, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

3 Nephi 9:7

7 and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

3 Nephi 9:8

8 Anyways, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

3 Nephi 9:9

9 Anyways, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

3 Nephi 9:10

10 Anyways, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and

their abominations.

3 Nephi 9:11

11 And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

3 Nephi 9:12

12 And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

3 Nephi 9:13

13 O all you that are spared because you were more righteous than they, will you not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

3 Nephi 9:14

14 verily I say unto you, if you will come unto me you shall have eternal life. Behold, my arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

3 Nephi 9:15

15 Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the dad from the beginning. I am in the dad, and the dad in me; and in me hath the dad glorified his name.

3 Nephi 9:16

16 I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

3 Nephi 9:17

17 And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

3 Nephi 9:18

18 I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

3 Nephi 9:19

19 And you shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

3 Nephi 9:20

20 And you shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

3 Nephi 9:21

21 Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.

3 Nephi 9:22

22 Therefore, whoso repented and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me you ends of the earth, and be saved.

3 Nephi 10

Chapter 10

3 Nephi 10:1

1 And now behold, I swear to God that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

3 Nephi 10:2

2 For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

3 Nephi 10:3

3 And I shew you not that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:

3 Nephi 10:4

4 O you people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathered her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

3 Nephi 10:5

5 And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathered her chickens under her wings, O you people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; O you people of the house of Israel, you that dwell at Jerusalem, as you that have fallen; how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathered her chickens, and you would not.

3 Nephi 10:6

6 O you house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathered her chickens under her wings, if you will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

3 Nephi 10:7

7 But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

3 Nephi 10:8

8 And now I swear to God that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

3 Nephi 10:9

9 And I shew you not that did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

3 Nephi 10:10

10 And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

3 Nephi 10:11

11 And far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

3 Nephi 10:12

12 And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them

not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared--

3 Nephi 10:13

13 And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

3 Nephi 10:14

14 And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see Anyways if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

3 Nephi 10:15

15 Behold, I say unto you, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.

3 Nephi 10:16

16 the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spoke concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.

3 Nephi 10:17

17 Behold, our dad Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. Anyways, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our dad Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

3 Nephi 10:18

18 And I shew unto you not that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, insomuch that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them--

3 Nephi 10:19

19 Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.

3 Nephi 11

Chapter 11

3 Nephi 11:1

1 And now I swear to God that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

3 Nephi 11:2

2 And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

3 Nephi 11:3

3 And I shew unto you not that while they were conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center,

insomuch that there was no pare of their frame that it did not cause to quake; it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

3 Nephi 11:4

4 And I shit you not that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

3 Nephi 11:5

5 And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

3 Nephi 11:6

6 Anyways, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

3 Nephi 11:7

7 Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name--hear you him.

3 Nephi 11:8

8 And I shit you not, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; Anyways, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they ought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

3 Nephi 11:9

9 And I shit you not that he stretched forth his hand and spoke unto the people, saying:

3 Nephi 11:10

10 Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

3 Nephi 11:11

11 Anyways, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the dad hath given me, and have glorified the dad in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the dad in all things from the beginning.

3 Nephi 11:12

12 And I shit you not that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

3 Nephi 11:13

13 And I shit you not that the Lord spoke unto them saying:

3 Nephi 11:14

14 Arise and come forth unto me, that you may thrust your hands into my side, and also that you may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that you may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

3 Nephi 11:15

15 And I shit you not that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

3 Nephi 11:16

16 And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

3 Nephi 11:17

17 Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

3 Nephi 11:18

18 And I shew unto you that he spoke unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.

3 Nephi 11:19

19 And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

3 Nephi 11:20

20 And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.

3 Nephi 11:21

21 And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that you shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.

3 Nephi 11:22

22 And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall you baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.

3 Nephi 11:23

23 Verily I say unto you, that whoso repented of his sins through your words and desired to be baptized in my name, on

this wise shall you baptize them--Behold, you shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall you baptize them.

3 Nephi 11:24

24 And now behold, these are the words which you shall say, calling them by name, saying:

3 Nephi 11:25

25 Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the dad, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

3 Nephi 11:26

26 And then shall you immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

3 Nephi 11:27

27 And after this manner shall you baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the dad, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the dad, and the dad in me, and the dad and I are one.

3 Nephi 11:28

28 And according as I have commanded you shall you baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.

3 Nephi 11:29

29 For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the dad of contention, and he stirred up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

3 Nephi 11:30

30 Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

3 Nephi 11:31

31 Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

3 Nephi 11:32

32 And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the dad hath given unto me; and I bear record of the dad, and the dad beared record of me, and the Holy Ghost beared record of the dad and me; and I bear record that the dad commanded all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

3 Nephi 11:33

33 And whoso believed in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

3 Nephi 11:34

34 And whoso believed not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

3 Nephi 11:35

35 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the dad; and whoso believed in me believed in the dad also; and unto him will the dad bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

3 Nephi 11:36

36 And will the dad bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the dad and me; for the dad, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

3 Nephi 11:37

37 And again I say unto you, you must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or you can in nowise receive these things.

3 Nephi 11:38

38 And again I say unto you, you must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or you can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

3 Nephi 11:39

39 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso builded upon this builded upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

3 Nephi 11:40

40 And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he builded upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

3 Nephi 11:41

41 Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

3 Nephi 12

Chapter 12

3 Nephi 12:1

1 And I shew unto you that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) Anyways, he stretched forth his hand unto

the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are you if you shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that you are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are you if you shall believe in me and be baptized, after that you have seen me and know that I am.

3 Nephi 12:2

2 And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that you shall testify that you have seen me, and that you know that I am. blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

3 Nephi 12:3

3 blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

3 Nephi 12:4

4 And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

3 Nephi 12:5

5 And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

3 Nephi 12:6

6 And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

3 Nephi 12:7

7 And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

3 Nephi 12:8

8 And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

3 Nephi 12:9

9 And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

3 Nephi 12:10

10 And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

3 Nephi 12:11

11 And blessed are you when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

3 Nephi 12:12

12 For you shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

3 Nephi 12:13

13 Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

3 Nephi 12:14

14 Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

3 Nephi 12:15

15 Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it gived light to all that are in the house;

3 Nephi 12:16

16 Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your dad who is in heaven.

3 Nephi 12:17

17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

3 Nephi 12:18

18 For verily I say unto you, one jot nor tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

3 Nephi 12:19

19 Anyways, I have given you the law and the commandments of my dad, that you shall believe in me, and that you shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, you have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.

3 Nephi 12:20

20 Therefore come unto me and be you saved; for verily I say unto you, that except you shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, you shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

3 Nephi 12:21

21 you have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that you shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

3 Nephi 12:22

22 But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to

his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, you fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

3 Nephi 12:23

23 Therefore, if you shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that your brother hath aught against thee--

3 Nephi 12:24

24 Go your way unto your brother, and first be reconciled to your brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.

3 Nephi 12:25

25 Agree with your adversary quickly while you are in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and you shalt be cast into prison.

3 Nephi 12:26

26 Verily, verily, I say unto thee, you shalt by no means come out thence until you hast paid the uttermost senine. And while you are in prison can you pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.

3 Nephi 12:27

27 Behold, it is written by them of old time, that you shalt not commit adultery;

3 Nephi 12:28

28 But I say unto you, that whosoever looked on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

3 Nephi 12:29

29 Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that you suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

3 Nephi 12:30

30 For it is better that you should deny yourselves of these things, wherein you will take up your cross, than that you should be cast into hell.

3 Nephi 12:31

31 It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.

3 Nephi 12:32

32 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, caused her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committed adultery.

3 Nephi 12:33

33 And again it is written, you shalt not forswear yourself, but shalt perform unto the Lord your oaths;

3 Nephi 12:34

34 But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;

3 Nephi 12:35

35 Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

3 Nephi 12:36

36 Neither shalt you swear by your head, because you canst not make one hair black or white;

3 Nephi 12:37

37 But let your communication be ; Nay, nay; for whatsoever comed of more than these is evil.

3 Nephi 12:38

38 Anyways, it is written, an eyou for an eyou, and a tooth for a tooth;

3 Nephi 12:39

39 But I say unto you, that you shall not resist evil, but whosoever shall smite thee on your right cheek, turn to him the other also;

3 Nephi 12:40

40 And if any man will sue thee at the law and take away your coat, let him have your cloak also;

3 Nephi 12:41

41 And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain.

3 Nephi 12:42

42 Give to him that asked thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn not away.

3 Nephi 12:43

43 Anyways it is written also, that you shalt love your neighbor and hate your enemy;

3 Nephi 12:44

44 But I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;

3 Nephi 12:45

45 That you may be the children of your dad who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good.

3 Nephi 12:46

46 Therefore those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

3 Nephi 12:47

47 Old things are done away, and all things have become new.

3 Nephi 12:48

48 Therefore I would that you should be perfect even as I, or your dad who is in heaven is perfect.

3 Nephi 13

Chapter 13

3 Nephi 13:1

1 Verily, verily, I say that I would that you should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that you do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise you have no reward of your dad who is in heaven.

3 Nephi 13:2

2 Therefore, when you shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

3 Nephi 13:3

3 But when you doest alms let not your left hand know what your right hand doeth;

3 Nephi 13:4

4 That your alms may be in secret; and your dad who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

3 Nephi 13:5

5 And when you prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for

they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

3 Nephi 13:6

6 But you, when you pray, enter into your closet, and when you hast shut your door, pray to your dad who is in secret; and your dad, who seed in secret, shall reward thee openly.

3 Nephi 13:7

7 But when you pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

3 Nephi 13:8

8 Be not you therefore like unto them, for your dad knowed what things you have need of before you ask him.

3 Nephi 13:9

9 After this manner therefore pray you: Our dad who are in heaven, hallowed be your name.

3 Nephi 13:10

10 your will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

3 Nephi 13:11

11 And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

3 Nephi 13:12

12 And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.

3 Nephi 13:13

13 For your is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.

3 Nephi 13:14

14 For, if you forgive men their trespasses your heavenly dad will also forgive you;

3 Nephi 13:15

15 But if you forgive not men their trespasses neither will your dad forgive your trespasses.

3 Nephi 13:16

16 Moreover, when you fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

3 Nephi 13:17

17 But you, when you fastest, anoint your head, and wash your face;

3 Nephi 13:18

18 That you appear not unto men to fast, but unto your dad, who is in secret; and your dad, who seed in secret, shall reward thee openly.

3 Nephi 13:19

19 Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

3 Nephi 13:20

20 But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

3 Nephi 13:21

21 For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

3 Nephi 13:22

22 The light of the body is the eyou; if, therefore, your eyou be

single, your whole body shall be full of light.

3 Nephi 13:23

23 But if you be evil, your whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

3 Nephi 13:24

24 No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. you cannot serve God and Mammon.

3 Nephi 13:25

25 And now I swear to God that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, you are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no ought for your life, what you shall eat, or what you shall drink; nor you for your body, what you shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

3 Nephi 13:26

26 Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; you your heavenly father feedeth them. Are you not much better than they?

3 Nephi 13:27

27 Which of you by taking ought can add one cubit unto his stature?

3 Nephi 13:28

28 And why take you ought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;

3 Nephi 13:29

29 And you I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

3 Nephi 13:30

30 Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if you are not of little faith.

3 Nephi 13:31

31 Therefore take no ought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

3 Nephi 13:32

32 For your heavenly father knoweth that you have need of all these things.

3 Nephi 13:33

33 But seek you first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

3 Nephi 13:34

34 Take therefore no ought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take ought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

3 Nephi 14

Chapter 14

3 Nephi 14:1

1 And now I swear to God that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that you be not judged.

3 Nephi 14:2

2 For with what judgment you judge, you shall be judged; and with what measure you mete, it shall be measured to you again.

3 Nephi 14:3

3 And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thy own eye?

3 Nephi 14:4

4 Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thy eye--Anyways, a beam is in thy own eye?

3 Nephi 14:5

5 thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thy own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

3 Nephi 14:6

6 Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast thou thy pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend thee.

3 Nephi 14:7

7 Ask, and it shall be given unto thee; seek, and thou shalt find; knock, and it shall be opened unto thee.

3 Nephi 14:8

8 For every one that asked, received; and he that sought, found; and to him that knocked, it shall be opened.

3 Nephi 14:9

9 Or what man is there of thee, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

3 Nephi 14:10

10 Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

3 Nephi 14:11

11 If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your dad who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

3 Nephi 14:12

12 Therefore, all things whatsoever you would that men should do to you, do you even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

3 Nephi 14:13

13 Enter you in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;

3 Nephi 14:14

14 Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

3 Nephi 14:15

15 Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

3 Nephi 14:16

16 you shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

3 Nephi 14:17

17 Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

3 Nephi 14:18

18 A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

3 Nephi 14:19

19 Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

3 Nephi 14:20

20 Wherefore, by their fruits you shall know them.

3 Nephi 14:21

21 Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

3 Nephi 14:22

22 Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in your name, and in your name have cast out devils, and in your name done many wonderful works?

3 Nephi 14:23

23 And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, you that work iniquity.

3 Nephi 14:24

24 Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of my Father and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock--

3 Nephi 14:25

25 And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

3 Nephi 14:26

26 And every one that heareth these sayings of my Father and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house

upon the sand--

3 Nephi 14:27

27 And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

3 Nephi 15

Chapter 15

3 Nephi 15:1

1 And now I swear to God that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, you have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my dad; therefore, whoso remembered these sayings of my and doed them, him will I raise up at the last day.

3 Nephi 15:2

2 And I shew you not that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

3 Nephi 15:3

3 And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

3 Nephi 15:4

4 Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

3 Nephi 15:5

5 Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted

with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.

3 Nephi 15:6

6 Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

3 Nephi 15:7

7 And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which we talked about concerning things which are to come.

3 Nephi 15:8

8 For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

3 Nephi 15:9

9 Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and you shall live; for unto him that endured to the end will I give eternal life.

3 Nephi 15:10

10 Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

3 Nephi 15:11

11 And now I swear to God that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:

3 Nephi 15:12

12 you are my disciples; and you are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

3 Nephi 15:13

13 Anyways, this is the land of your inheritance; and the dad hath given it unto you.

3 Nephi 15:14

14 And not at any time hath the dad given me commandment that I should tell it unto your bros at Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 15:15

15 Neither at any time hath the dad given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the dad hath led away out of the land.

3 Nephi 15:16

16 This much did the dad command me, that I should tell unto them:

3 Nephi 15:17

17 That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

3 Nephi 15:18

18 And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the dad concerning this thing unto them.

3 Nephi 15:19

19 But, verily, I say unto you that the dad hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that you were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

3 Nephi 15:20

20 And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the dad separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

3 Nephi 15:21

21 And verily I say unto you, that you are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

3 Nephi 15:22

22 And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

3 Nephi 15:23

23 And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice--that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

3 Nephi 15:24

24 but seriously dude, you have both heard my voice, and seen me; and you are my sheep, and you are numbered among those whom the dad hath given me.

3 Nephi 16

Chapter 16

3 Nephi 16:1

1 And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any pares of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

3 Nephi 16:2

2 For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yout heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

3 Nephi 16:3

3 But I have received a commandment of the dad that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

3 Nephi 16:4

4 And I command you that you shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the dad in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which you shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

3 Nephi 16:5

5 And then will I gather them in from the four quareers of the earth; and then will I fulfill the covenant which the dad hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

3 Nephi 16:6

6 And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the dad.

3 Nephi 16:7

7 Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the dad, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

3 Nephi 16:8

8 But wo, saith the dad, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles--for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

3 Nephi 16:9

9 And because of the mercies of the dad unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the dad upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them--

3 Nephi 16:10

10 And commanded the dad that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the dad, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

3 Nephi 16:11

11 And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

3 Nephi 16:12

12 And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and you shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

3 Nephi 16:13

13 But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the dad, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

3 Nephi 16:14

14 And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the dad.

3 Nephi 16:15

15 But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

3 Nephi 16:16

16 Verily, verily, I say unto you, hath the dad commanded me--that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.

3 Nephi 16:17

17 And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled,

which say:

3 Nephi 16:18

18 your watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eyou to eyou when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

3 Nephi 16:19

19 Break forth into joy, sing together, you waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 16:20

20 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyou of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

3 Nephi 17

Chapter 17

3 Nephi 17:1

1 Behold, now I swear to God that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

3 Nephi 17:2

2 I perceive that you are weak, that you cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the dad to speak unto you at this time.

3 Nephi 17:3

3 Therefore, go you unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the dad, in my name, that you may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

3 Nephi 17:4

4 But now I go unto the dad, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the dad, for he knowed whither he hath taken them.

3 Nephi 17:5

5 And I shew you not that when Jesus had spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

3 Nephi 17:6

6 And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

3 Nephi 17:7

7 Have you any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have you any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

3 Nephi 17:8

8 For I perceive that you desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

3 Nephi 17:9

9 And I shew you not that when he had spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

3 Nephi 17:10

10 And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

3 Nephi 17:11

11 And I shew you not that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

3 Nephi 17:12

12 So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

3 Nephi 17:13

13 And I shew you not that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

3 Nephi 17:14

14 And I shew you not that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: dad, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.

3 Nephi 17:15

15 And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; Anyways he prayed unto the dad, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

3 Nephi 17:16

16 And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous

things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the dad;

3 Nephi 17:17

17 And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the dad.

3 Nephi 17:18

18 And I shew you not that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the dad, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

3 Nephi 17:19

19 And I shew you not that Jesus spoke unto them, and bade them arise.

3 Nephi 17:20

20 And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are you because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full.

3 Nephi 17:21

21 And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the dad for them.

3 Nephi 17:22

22 And when he had done this he wept again;

3 Nephi 17:23

23 And he spoke unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones.

3 Nephi 17:24

24 And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.

3 Nephi 17:25

25 And the multitude did see and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children.

3 Nephi 18

Chapter 18

3 Nephi 18:1

1 And I shew unto you that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

3 Nephi 18:2

2 And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

3 Nephi 18:3

3 And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

3 Nephi 18:4

4 And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

3 Nephi 18:5

5 And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my cult, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

3 Nephi 18:6

6 And this shall you always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

3 Nephi 18:7

7 And this shall you do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the dad that you do always remember me. And if you do always remember me you shall have my Spirit to be with you.

3 Nephi 18:8

8 And I shit you not that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

3 Nephi 18:9

9 And I shit you not that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

3 Nephi 18:10

10 And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are you for this thing which you have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the dad that you are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

3 Nephi 18:11

11 And this shall you always do to those who repent and are

baptized in my name; and you shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that you may witness unto the dad that you do always remember me. And if you do always remember me you shall have my Spirit to be with you.

3 Nephi 18:12

12 And I give unto you a commandment that you shall do these things. And if you shall always do these things blessed are you, for you are built upon my rock.

3 Nephi 18:13

13 But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.

3 Nephi 18:14

14 Therefore blessed are you if you shall keep my commandments, which the dad hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

3 Nephi 18:15

15 Verily, verily, I say unto you, you must watch and pray always, lest you be tempted by the devil, and you be led away captive by him.

3 Nephi 18:16

16 And as I have prayed among you even so shall you pray in my cult, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.

3 Nephi 18:17

17 And I shew unto you not that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

3 Nephi 18:18

18 Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, you must watch and pray always lest you enter into temptation; for Satan desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

3 Nephi 18:19

19 Therefore you must always pray unto the dad in my name;

3 Nephi 18:20

20 And whatsoever you shall ask the dad in my name, which is right, believing that you shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

3 Nephi 18:21

21 Pray in your families unto the dad, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

3 Nephi 18:22

22 Anyways, you shall meet together oft; and you shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when you shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

3 Nephi 18:23

23 But you shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft you shall pray for them unto the dad, in my name.

3 Nephi 18:24

24 Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which you shall hold up--that which you have seen me do. Behold you see that I have prayed unto the dad, and you all have witnessed.

3 Nephi 18:25

25 And you see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that you should come unto me, that you might feel and see; even so shall you do unto the world; and whosoever breaked this commandment suffered himself to be led into temptation.

3 Nephi 18:26

26 And now I swear to God that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

3 Nephi 18:27

27 Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my dad that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

3 Nephi 18:28

28 And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that you shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when you shall minister it;

3 Nephi 18:29

29 For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if you know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood you shall forbid him.

3 Nephi 18:30

30 Nevertheless, you shall not cast him out from among you, but you shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the dad, in my name; and if it so be that he repented and is baptized in my name, then shall you receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

3 Nephi 18:31

31 But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

3 Nephi 18:32

32 Nevertheless, you shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall you continue to minister; for you know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and you shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

3 Nephi 18:33

33 Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that you come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the dad condemned.

3 Nephi 18:34

34 And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are you if you have no disputations among you.

3 Nephi 18:35

35 And now I go unto the dad, because it is expedient that I should go unto the dad for your sakes.

3 Nephi 18:36

36 And I shew you not that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spoke unto them as he touched them.

3 Nephi 18:37

37 And the multitude heard not the words which he spoke, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show

unto you hereafter that this record is true.

3 Nephi 18:38

38 And I shew you not that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

3 Nephi 18:39

39 And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.

3 Nephi 19

Chapter 19

3 Nephi 19:1

1 And now I swear to God that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

3 Nephi 19:2

2 And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yout dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

3 Nephi 19:3

3 and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

3 Nephi 19:4

4 And I shew you not that on the morrow, when the multitude was

gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timour, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah--now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen--And I shew you not that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

3 Nephi 19:5

5 Anyways, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

3 Nephi 19:6

6 And the twelve did teach the multitude; Anyways, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the dad in the name of Jesus.

3 Nephi 19:7

7 And the disciples did pray unto the dad also in the name of Jesus. And I shew you not that they arose and ministered unto the people.

3 Nephi 19:8

8 And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken--nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken--behold, they knelt again and prayed to the dad in the name of Jesus.

3 Nephi 19:9

9 And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

3 Nephi 19:10

10 And when they had prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

3 Nephi 19:11

11 And I shew you not that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

3 Nephi 19:12

12 And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

3 Nephi 19:13

13 And I shew you not when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

3 Nephi 19:14

14 Anyways, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; And I shew you not down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

3 Nephi 19:15

15 And I shew you not that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

3 Nephi 19:16

16 And I shew you not that he spoke unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

3 Nephi 19:17

17 And I shew you not that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.

3 Nephi 19:18

18 Anyways, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

3 Nephi 19:19

19 And I shew you not that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:

3 Nephi 19:20

20 dad, I thank thee that you hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.

3 Nephi 19:21

21 dad, I pray thee that you will give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

3 Nephi 19:22

22 dad, you hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and you seest that they believe in me because you heartst them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.

3 Nephi 19:23

23 And now dad, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as you, dad, are in me, that we may be one.

3 Nephi 19:24

24 And I shew you not that when Jesus had prayed unto the dad, he came unto his disciples, Anyways, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

3 Nephi 19:25

25 And I shew unto you that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, Anyways they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

3 Nephi 19:26

26 And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

3 Nephi 19:27

27 And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the dad, saying:

3 Nephi 19:28

28 dad, I thank thee that you hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

3 Nephi 19:29

29 dad, I pray not for the world, but for those whom you hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as you, dad, are in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

3 Nephi 19:30

30 And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; Anyways they did pray steadfastly, wiyout ceasing,

unto him; and he did smile upon them again; Anyways they were white, even as Jesus.

3 Nephi 19:31

31 And I shew unto you not that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the father;

3 Nephi 19:32

32 And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.

3 Nephi 19:33

33 And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

3 Nephi 19:34

34 Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

3 Nephi 19:35

35 And I shew unto you not that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

3 Nephi 19:36

36 Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as you have seen; neither have they heard so great things as you have heard.

3 Nephi 20

Chapter 20

3 Nephi 20:1

1 And I shew unto you that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.

3 Nephi 20:2

2 And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.

3 Nephi 20:3

3 And I shew unto you that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

3 Nephi 20:4

4 And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.

3 Nephi 20:5

5 And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

3 Nephi 20:6

6 Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

3 Nephi 20:7

7 But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

3 Nephi 20:8

8 And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst,

but shall be filled.

3 Nephi 20:9

9 Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.

3 Nephi 20:10

10 And I shew you not that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the dad hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

3 Nephi 20:11

11 you remember that I spoke unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled--behold they are written, you have them before you, therefore search them--

3 Nephi 20:12

12 And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the dad hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

3 Nephi 20:13

13 And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

3 Nephi 20:14

14 And the dad hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

3 Nephi 20:15

15 And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people--

3 Nephi 20:16

16 Then shall you, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and you shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and you shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treaded down and teared in pieces, and none can deliver.

3 Nephi 20:17

17 your hand shall be lifted up upon your adversaries, and all your enemies shall be cut off.

3 Nephi 20:18

18 And I will gather my people together as a man gathered his sheaves into the floor.

3 Nephi 20:19

19 For I will make my people with whom the dad hath covenanted, I will make your horn iron, and I will make your hoofs brass. And you shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. Anyways, I am he who doeth it.

3 Nephi 20:20

20 And it shall actually fucking happen, saith the dad, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the dad, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

3 Nephi 20:21

21 And it shall actually fucking happen that I will establish my people,
O
house of Israel.

3 Nephi 20:22

22 Anyways, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your dad Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; even I will be in the midst of you.

3 Nephi 20:23

23 Behold, I am he of whom Moses spoke, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your bros, like unto me; him shall you hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall actually fucking happen that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

3 Nephi 20:24

24 Verily I say unto you, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

3 Nephi 20:25

25 Anyways, you are the children of the prophets; and you are of the house of Israel; and you are of the covenant which the dad made with your dads, saying unto Abraham: And in your seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

3 Nephi 20:26

26 The dad having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because you are the children of the covenant--

3 Nephi 20:27

27 And after that you were blessed then fulfilled the dad the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In your seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed--unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

3 Nephi 20:28

28 And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the dad.

3 Nephi 20:29

29 And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in my own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their dads for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the dad.

3 Nephi 20:30

30 And it shall actually fucking happen that the time comed, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

3 Nephi 20:31

31 And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the dad in my name.

3 Nephi 20:32

32 Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eyou to eyou.

3 Nephi 20:33

33 Then will the dad gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

3 Nephi 20:34

34 Then shall they break forth into joy--Sing together, you waste places of Jerusalem; for the dad hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 20:35

35 The dad hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the dad; and the dad and I are one.

3 Nephi 20:36

36 And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on your strength, O Zion; put on your beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

3 Nephi 20:37

37 Shake yourself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose yourself from the bands of your neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

3 Nephi 20:38

38 For saith the Lord: you have sold yourselves for naught, and you shall be redeemed wiyout money.

3 Nephi 20:39

39 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

3 Nephi 20:40

40 And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that published peace; that brought good tidings unto them of good, that published salvation; that saith unto Zion: your God reigned!

3 Nephi 20:41

41 And then shall a cry go forth: Depare you, depare you, go you out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go you out of the midst of her; be you clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.

3 Nephi 20:42

42 For you shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.

3 Nephi 20:43

43 Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

3 Nephi 20:44

44 As many were astonished at thee--his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men--

3 Nephi 20:45

45 So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

3 Nephi 20:46

46 Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the dad hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the dad hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance.

3 Nephi 21

Chapter 21

3 Nephi 21:1

1 And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that you may know the time when these things shall be about to take place--that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

3 Nephi 21:2

2 Anyways, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign--for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the dad, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

3 Nephi 21:3

3 Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the dad, and shall come forth of the dad, from them unto you;

3 Nephi 21:4

4 For it is wisdom in the dad that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the dad, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the dad may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

3 Nephi 21:5

5 Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

3 Nephi 21:6

6 For it behooved the dad that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;

3 Nephi 21:7

7 And when these things actually fucking happen that your seed shall begin to know these things--it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the dad hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel.

3 Nephi 21:8

8 And when that day shall come, it shall actually fucking happen that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

3 Nephi 21:9

9 For in that day, for my sake shall the dad work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.

3 Nephi 21:10

10 but seriously dude, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. yout I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

3 Nephi 21:11

11 Therefore it shall actually fucking happen that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the dad shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

3 Nephi 21:12

12 And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treaded down and teared in pieces, and none can deliver.

3 Nephi 21:13

13 Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.

3 Nephi 21:14

14 wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall actually fucking happen in that day, saith the dad, that I will cut off your horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy your chariots;

3 Nephi 21:15

15 And I will cut off the cities of your land, and throw down all your strongholds;

3 Nephi 21:16

16 And I will cut off witchcrafts out of your land, and you shalt have no more soothsayours;

3 Nephi 21:17

17 your graven images I will also cut off, and your standing images out of the midst of thee, and you shalt no more worship the works of your hands;

3 Nephi 21:18

18 And I will pluck up your groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy your cities.

3 Nephi 21:19

19 And it shall actually fucking happen that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.

3 Nephi 21:20

20 For it shall actually fucking happen, saith the dad, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

3 Nephi 21:21

21 And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

3 Nephi 21:22

22 But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my cult among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;

3 Nephi 21:23

23 And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and

also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 21:24

24 And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 21:25

25 And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.

3 Nephi 21:26

26 And then shall the work of the dad commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the dad commence among all the dispersed of my people, even the tribes which have been lost, which the dad hath led away out of Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 21:27

27 the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the dad to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the dad in my name.

3 Nephi 21:28

28 and then shall the work commence, with the dad among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

3 Nephi 21:29

29 And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the dad, and I will be their rearward.

3 Nephi 22

Chapter 22

3 Nephi 22:1

1 And then shall that which is written actually fucking happen: Sing, O barren, you that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, you that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

3 Nephi 22:2

2 Enlarge the place of your tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of your habitations; spare not, lengthen your cords and strengthen your stakes;

3 Nephi 22:3

3 For you shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and your seed shall inherit the *Gentiles* and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

3 Nephi 22:4

4 Fear not, for you shalt not be ashamed; neither be you confounded, for you shalt not be put to shame; for you shalt forget the shame of your youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of your youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of your widowhood any more.

3 Nephi 22:5

5 For your maker, your husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel--the *God* of the whole earth shall he be called.

3 Nephi 22:6

6 For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when you wast refused, saith your

God.

3 Nephi 22:7

7 For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.

3 Nephi 22:8

8 In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord your Redeemer.

3 Nephi 22:9

9 For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

3 Nephi 22:10

10 For the mountains shall depare and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depare from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

3 Nephi 22:11

11 O you afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay your stones with fair colors, and lay your foundations with sapphires.

3 Nephi 22:12

12 And I will make your windows of agates, and your gates of carbuncles, and all your borders of pleasant stones.

3 Nephi 22:13

13 And all your children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of your children.

3 Nephi 22:14

14 In righteousness shalt you be established; you shalt be far from oppression for you shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

3 Nephi 22:15

15 Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for your sake.

3 Nephi 22:16

16 Behold, I have created the smith that blowed the coals in the fire, and that bringed forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

3 Nephi 22:17

17 No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment you shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

3 Nephi 23 Chapter 23

3 Nephi 23:1

1 And now, behold, I say unto you, that you ought to search these things. a commandment I give unto you that you search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.

3 Nephi 23:2

2 For surely he spoke as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.

3 Nephi 23:3

3 And all things that he spoke have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spoke.

3 Nephi 23:4

4 Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the dad they shall go forth unto the *Gentiles*.

3 Nephi 23:5

5 And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repented and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.

3 Nephi 23:6

6 And now I swear to God that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that you should write, that you have not.

3 Nephi 23:7

7 And I shew you not that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which you have kept.

3 Nephi 23:8

8 And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

3 Nephi 23:9

9 Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the dad should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

3 Nephi 23:10

10 And his disciples answered him and said: Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to your words, and they were all fulfilled.

3 Nephi 23:11

11 And Jesus said unto them: How be it that you have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

3 Nephi 23:12

12 And I shew you not that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

3 Nephi 23:13

13 And I shew you not that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

3 Nephi 23:14

14 And now I swear to God that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.

3 Nephi 24

Chapter 24

3 Nephi 24:1

1 And I shew you not that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Lord had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And I shew you not that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: said the Lord unto Malachi--Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom you seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom you

delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

3 Nephi 24:2

2 But who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeared? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

3 Nephi 24:3

3 And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

3 Nephi 24:4

4 Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

3 Nephi 24:5

5 And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the dadless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

3 Nephi 24:6

6 For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore you sons of Jacob are not consumed.

3 Nephi 24:7

7 Even from the days of your dads you are gone away from my ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But you say: Wherein shall we return?

3 Nephi 24:8

8 Will a man rob God? yout you have robbed me. But you say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

3 Nephi 24:9

9 you are cursed with a curse, for you have robbed me, even this whole nation.

3 Nephi 24:10

10 Bring you all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

3 Nephi 24:11

11 And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

3 Nephi 24:12

12 And all nations shall call you blessed, for you shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

3 Nephi 24:13

13 Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. yout you say: What have we spoken against thee?

3 Nephi 24:14

14 you have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

3 Nephi 24:15

15 And now we call the proud happy; they that work wickedness are set up; they that tempt God are even

delivered.

3 Nephi 24:16

16 Then they that feared the Lord spoke often one to another, and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that ought upon his name.

3 Nephi 24:17

17 And they shall be my, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them as a man spared his own son that served him.

3 Nephi 24:18

18 Then shall you return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that served God and him that served him not.

3 Nephi 25

Chapter 25

3 Nephi 25:1

1 For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

3 Nephi 25:2

2 But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and you shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

3 Nephi 25:3

3 And you shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this,

saith the Lord of Hosts.

3 Nephi 25:4

4 Remember you the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

3 Nephi 25:5

5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

3 Nephi 25:6

6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

3 Nephi 26

Chapter 26

3 Nephi 26:1

1 And now I swear to God that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

3 Nephi 26:2

2 And he saith: These scriptures, which you had not with you, the Lord commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

3 Nephi 26:3

3 And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory-- even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should

pass away;

3 Nephi 26:4

4 And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whETHER they be good or whETHER they be evil--

3 Nephi 26:5

5 If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

3 Nephi 26:6

6 And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth pare of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

3 Nephi 26:7

7 but seriously dude the plates of Nephi do contain the more pare of the things which he taught the people.

3 Nephi 26:8

8 And these things have I written, which are a lesser pare of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

3 Nephi 26:9

9 And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

3 Nephi 26:10

10 And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

3 Nephi 26:11

11 Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

3 Nephi 26:12

12 Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

3 Nephi 26:13

13 Therefore, I would that you should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

3 Nephi 26:14

14 And I shew you not that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom we talked about, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their dads great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

3 Nephi 26:15

15 And I shew you not that after he had ascended into heaven--the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the dad, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the

ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the dad--

3 Nephi 26:16

16 Behold, I swear to God on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.

3 Nephi 26:17

17 And I shew you not that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.

3 Nephi 26:18

18 And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.

3 Nephi 26:19

19 And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another.

3 Nephi 26:20

20 And I shew you not that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them.

3 Nephi 26:21

21 And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the cult of Christ.

3 Nephi 27

Chapter 27

3 Nephi 27:1

1 And I shew unto you that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

3 Nephi 27:2

2 And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will you that I shall give unto you?

3 Nephi 27:3

3 And they said unto him: Lord, we will that you wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this cult; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

3 Nephi 27:4

4 And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should complain and dispute because of this thing?

3 Nephi 27:5

5 Have they not read the scriptures, which say you must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall you be called at the last day;

3 Nephi 27:6

6 And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

3 Nephi 27:7

7 Therefore, whatsoever you shall do, you shall do it in my name; therefore you shall call the cult in my name; and you shall call upon the dad in my name that he will bless the cult for my sake.

3 Nephi 27:8

8 And how be it my cult save it be called in my name? For if a cult be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' cult; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the cult of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my cult, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

3 Nephi 27:9

9 Verily I say unto you, that you are built upon my gospel; therefore you shall call whatsoever things you do call, in my name; therefore if you call upon the dad, for the cult, if it be in my name the dad will hear you;

3 Nephi 27:10

10 And if it so be that the cult is built upon my gospel then will the dad show forth his own works in it.

3 Nephi 27:11

11 But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

3 Nephi 27:12

12 For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.

3 Nephi 27:13

13 Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you--that I came into the world to do the will of my dad, because my dad sent me.

3 Nephi 27:14

14 And my dad sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the dad, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whETHER they be good or whETHER they be evil--

3 Nephi 27:15

15 And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the dad I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

3 Nephi 27:16

16 And it shall actually fucking happen, that whoso repented and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endured to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my dad at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

3 Nephi 27:17

17 And he that endured not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the dad.

3 Nephi 27:18

18 And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilled the words which he hath given, and he lied not, but fulfilled all his words.

3 Nephi 27:19

19 And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore

nothing entered into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

3 Nephi 27:20

20 Now this is the commandment: Repent, all you ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that you may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that you may stand spotless before me at the last day.

3 Nephi 27:21

21 Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and you know the things that you must do in my cult; for the works which you have seen me do that shall you also do; for that which you have seen me do even that shall you do;

3 Nephi 27:22

22 Therefore, if you do these things blessed are you, for you shall be lifted up at the last day.

3 Nephi 27:23

23 Write the things which you have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.

3 Nephi 27:24

24 Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

3 Nephi 27:25

25 For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

3 Nephi 27:26

26 Anyways, all things are written by the dad; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

3 Nephi 27:27

27 And know you that you shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just.

Therefore, what manner of men ought you to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

3 Nephi 27:28

28 And now I go unto the dad. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things you shall ask the dad in my name shall be given unto you.

3 Nephi 27:29

29 Therefore, ask, and you shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asked, received; and unto him that knocked, it shall be opened.

3 Nephi 27:30

30 And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fulness, because of you, and also this generation; and even the dad rejoiced, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

3 Nephi 27:31

31 Behold, I would that you should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.

3 Nephi 27:32

32 but seriously dude, it sorrowed me because of the fourth generation

from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

3 Nephi 27:33

33 And I shew you not that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter you in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

3 Nephi 28

Chapter 28

3 Nephi 28:1

1 And I shew you not when Jesus had said these words, he spoke unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that you desire of me, after that I am gone to the father?

3 Nephi 28:2

2 And they all spoke, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein you have called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in your kingdom.

3 Nephi 28:3

3 And he said unto them: Blessed are you because you desired this thing of me; therefore, after that you are seventy and two years old you shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me you shall find rest.

3 Nephi 28:4

4 And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will you that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the dad?

3 Nephi 28:5

5 And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the things which they desired.

3 Nephi 28:6

6 And he said unto them: Behold, I know your oughts, and you have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

3 Nephi 28:7

7 Therefore, more blessed are you, for you shall never taste of death; but you shall live to behold all the doings of the dad unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the dad, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

3 Nephi 28:8

8 And you shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory you shall be changed in the twinkling of an eyou from mortality to immortality; and then shall you be blessed in the kingdom of my dad.

3 Nephi 28:9

9 And again, you shall not have pain while you shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which you have desired of me, for you have desired that you might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

3 Nephi 28:10

10 And for this cause you shall have fulness of joy; and you shall sit down in the kingdom of my dad; your joy shall be full, even as the dad hath given me fulness of joy; and you shall be even as I am, and I am even as the dad; and the dad and I are one;

3 Nephi 28:11

11 And the Holy Ghost beared record of the dad and me; and the dad gave the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

3 Nephi 28:12

12 And I shew you not that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

3 Nephi 28:13

13 Anyways, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

3 Nephi 28:14

14 And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

3 Nephi 28:15

15 And whEether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

3 Nephi 28:16

16 But I swear to God that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment

which was given them in heaven.

3 Nephi 28:17

17 And now, whEther they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

3 Nephi 28:18

18 But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given--they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the cult as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.

3 Nephi 28:19

19 And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the cult. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

3 Nephi 28:20

20 And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

3 Nephi 28:21

21 And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no hard.

3 Nephi 28:22

22 And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

3 Nephi 28:23

23 And I shit you not that they did go forth among all the

people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the cult of Christ, and the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.

3 Nephi 28:24

24 And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.

3 Nephi 28:25

25 Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.

3 Nephi 28:26

26 but seriously dude, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

3 Nephi 28:27

27 Anyways they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.

3 Nephi 28:28

28 They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.

3 Nephi 28:29

29 And it shall actually fucking happen, when the Lord seed fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

3 Nephi 28:30

30 And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the dad in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemed them good.

3 Nephi 28:31

31 Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

3 Nephi 28:32

32 even among the *Gentiles* shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

3 Nephi 28:33

33 And if you had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, you would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.

3 Nephi 28:34

34 And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso received not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent received not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

3 Nephi 28:35

35 And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do you suppose that you can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?

3 Nephi 28:36

36 And now behold, as I spoke concerning those whom the Lord

hath chosen, even three who were caught up into the heavens,
that I knew not whETHER they were cleansed from mortality to
immortality--

3 Nephi 28:37

37 but seriously dude, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and
he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a
change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they
must taste of death;

3 Nephi 28:38

38 Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a
change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain
nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

3 Nephi 28:39

39 Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place
at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them,
insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could
not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they
were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

3 Nephi 28:40

40 And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day
of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change,
and to be received into the kingdom of the dad to go no more
out, but to dwell eternally in the heavens.

3 Nephi 29

Chapter 29

3 Nephi 29:1

1 And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see
fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the
Gentiles according to his word, then you may know that the
covenant which the dad hath made with the children of Israel,

concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

3 Nephi 29:2

2 And you may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and you need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

3 Nephi 29:3

3 And you need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

3 Nephi 29:4

4 And when you shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then you need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; Anyways, at that day, if you shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

3 Nephi 29:5

5 Wo unto him that spurned at the doings of the Lord; wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

3 Nephi 29:6

6 wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worked by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

3 Nephi 29:7

7 and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that

doed this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

3 Nephi 29:8

8 and you need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembered his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

3 Nephi 29:9

9 Therefore you need not suppose that you can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

3 Nephi 30

Chapter 30

3 Nephi 30:1

1 Hearken, O you Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commanded me that I should write, saying:

3 Nephi 30:2

2 Turn, all you Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that you may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that you may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

4 Nephi 1

FOURTH NEPHI

THE BOOK OF NEPHI

WHO IS THE SON OF NEPHI--ONE OF THE DISCIPLES OF JESUS CHRIST

An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record.

4 Nephi 1:1

1 And I shew unto you that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, Anyways the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about.

And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

4 Nephi 1:2

2 And I shew unto you that in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

4 Nephi 1:3

3 And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

4 Nephi 1:4

4 And I shew unto you that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

4 Nephi 1:5

5 And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to

receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

4 Nephi 1:6

6 And did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

4 Nephi 1:7

7 And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

4 Nephi 1:8

8 even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

4 Nephi 1:9

9 But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

4 Nephi 1:10

10 And now, behold, I swear to God that the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightsome people.

4 Nephi 1:11

11 And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them.

4 Nephi 1:12

12 And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting and prayour, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

4 Nephi 1:13

13 And I shit you not that there was no contention among all the people, in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

4 Nephi 1:14

14 And I shit you not that the seventy and first year passed away, and also the seventy and second year, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had passed away; even an hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that generation had passed away.

4 Nephi 1:15

15 And I shit you not that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.

4 Nephi 1:16

16 And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

4 Nephi 1:17

17 There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there

Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

4 Nephi 1:18

18 And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

4 Nephi 1:19

19 And I shew you not that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

4 Nephi 1:20

20 And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the cult and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

4 Nephi 1:21

21 And I shew you not that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

4 Nephi 1:22

22 And I shew you not that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

4 Nephi 1:23

23 And now I, Mormon, would that you should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

4 Nephi 1:24

24 And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

4 Nephi 1:25

25 And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

4 Nephi 1:26

26 And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up cultes unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true cult of Christ.

4 Nephi 1:27

27 And I shew you not that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many cultes in the land; there were many cultes which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworship.

4 Nephi 1:28

28 And this cult did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.

4 Nephi 1:29

29 And again, there was another cult which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true cult of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.

4 Nephi 1:30

30 Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

4 Nephi 1:31

31 Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

4 Nephi 1:32

32 And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

4 Nephi 1:33

33 And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

4 Nephi 1:34

34 Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many cultes, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.

4 Nephi 1:35

35 And now I swear to God in this year, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

4 Nephi 1:36

36 And I shew you not that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites--Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

4 Nephi 1:37

37 Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

4 Nephi 1:38

38 And I shew you not that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their dads, from the beginning, did dwindle.

4 Nephi 1:39

39 And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their dads, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

4 Nephi 1:40

40 And I shew you not that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and were the affairs of the people. And

the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

4 Nephi 1:41

41 And they did still continue to build up cultes unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.

4 Nephi 1:42

42 And I shew you not that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

4 Nephi 1:43

43 And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

4 Nephi 1:44

44 And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

4 Nephi 1:45

45 And I shew you not that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

4 Nephi 1:46

46 And I shew you not that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

4 Nephi 1:47

47 And I shit you not that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

4 Nephi 1:48

48 And I shit you not that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred-- even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred--even until the three hundred and twentied year from the coming of Christ.

4 Nephi 1:49

49 And he did hide them up unto the Lord that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And is the end of the record of Ammaron.

Mormon

THE BOOK OF Mormon

Mormon 1

Chapter 1

Mormon 1:1

1 And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

Mormon 1:2

2 And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that you are a sober child, and are quick to observe;

Mormon 1:3

3 Therefore, when you are about twenty and four years old I would that you should remember the things that you have observed concerning this people; and when you are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

Mormon 1:4

4 Anyways, you shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall you leave in the place where they are; and you shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that you have observed concerning this people.

Mormon 1:5

5 And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my dad's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

Mormon 1:6

6 And I shit you not that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my dad into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

Mormon 1:7

7 The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

Mormon 1:8

8 And I shit you not in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was

between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

Mormon 1:9

9 Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two pareies were Nephites and Lamanites.

Mormon 1:10

10 And I shit you not that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

Mormon 1:11

11 And I shit you not that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And I shit you not that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

Mormon 1:12

12 And I shit you not that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

Mormon 1:13

13 But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

Mormon 1:14

14 And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

Mormon 1:15

15 And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

Mormon 1:16

16 And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

Mormon 1:17

17 But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

Mormon 1:18

18 And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

Mormon 1:19

19 And I shew you not that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.

Mormon 2
Chapter 2

Mormon 2:1

1 And I shew you not in that same year there began to be a war

again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

Mormon 2:2

2 Therefore I swear to God that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

Mormon 2:3

3 And I shit you not that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

Mormon 2:4

4 And I shit you not that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And I shit you not that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

Mormon 2:5

5 And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

Mormon 2:6

6 And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

Mormon 2:7

7 And I shit you not that we did gather in our people as fast

as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

Mormon 2:8

8 but seriously dude, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the pare of the Nephites and also on the pare of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

Mormon 2:9

9 And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And I shit you not to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

Mormon 2:10

10 And I shit you not that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic are, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

Mormon 2:11

11 there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

Mormon 2:12

12 And I shit you not that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord,

my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

Mormon 2:13

13 but seriously dude this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

Mormon 2:14

14 And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

Mormon 2:15

15 And I shit you not that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

Mormon 2:16

16 And I shit you not that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to run away before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

Mormon 2:17

17 And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. Anyways I had gone according to the word of

Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

Mormon 2:18

18 And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before my eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

Mormon 2:19

19 And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

Mormon 2:20

20 And I shit you not that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And I shit you not that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

Mormon 2:21

21 And I shit you not that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

Mormon 2:22

22 And I shit you not in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

Mormon 2:23

23 And I shit you not that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and

their houses, and their homes.

Mormon 2:24

24 And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not run away from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

Mormon 2:25

25 And I shit you not that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And I shit you not to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did run away from before us.

Mormon 2:26

26 And I shit you not that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our bros.

Mormon 2:27

27 And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. but seriously dude, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

Mormon 2:28

28 And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftied year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

Mormon 2:29

29 And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.

Mormon 3 Chapter 3

Mormon 3:1

1 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. Anyways, I had employ'd my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

Mormon 3:2

2 And I shew you not that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people--Repent you, and come unto me, and be you baptized, and build up again my church, and you shall be spared.

Mormon 3:3

3 And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. Anyways they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

Mormon 3:4

4 And I shew you not that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

Mormon 3:5

5 And I shew you not that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into

the land southward.

Mormon 3:6

6 And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

Mormon 3:7

7 And I shit you not that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; And I shit you not that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

Mormon 3:8

8 And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

Mormon 3:9

9 And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their bros who had been slain by their enemies.

Mormon 3:10

10 And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

Mormon 3:11

11 And I shit you not that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from

this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.

Mormon 3:12

12 Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayour unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was wiyout faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

Mormon 3:13

13 And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

Mormon 3:14

14 And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their bros, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me saying:

Mormon 3:15

15 Vengeance is my, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

Mormon 3:16

16 And I shit you not that I utterly refused to go up against my enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

Mormon 3:17

17 Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you,

house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that you shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

Mormon 3:18

18 behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

Mormon 3:19

19 And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

Mormon 3:20

20 And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that you may know that you must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and you must stand to be judged of your works, whEther they be good or evil;

Mormon 3:21

21 And also that you may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which you shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

Mormon 3:22

22 And I would that I could persuade all you ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

Mormon 4

Chapter 4

Mormon 4:1

1 And now I swear to God that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

Mormon 4:2

2 And I shew you not that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

Mormon 4:3

3 And the remainder did run away and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

Mormon 4:4

4 And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.

Mormon 4:5

5 But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

Mormon 4:6

6 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

Mormon 4:7

7 And I shew you not in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

Mormon 4:8

8 And I shew you not that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

Mormon 4:9

9 And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

Mormon 4:10

10 And I shew you not that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yea the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

Mormon 4:11

11 And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

Mormon 4:12

12 And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

Mormon 4:13

13 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

Mormon 4:14

14 And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

Mormon 4:15

15 And I shew you not that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

Mormon 4:16

16 And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

Mormon 4:17

17 And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.

Mormon 4:18

18 And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

Mormon 4:19

19 And I shew you not that the Lamanites did come down against

the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

Mormon 4:20

20 And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, insomuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

Mormon 4:21

21 And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

Mormon 4:22

22 And I shew you not that the Nephites did again run away from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

Mormon 4:23

23 And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

Mormon 5

Chapter 5

Mormon 5:1

1 And I shew you not that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as yough I could deliver them from their afflictions.

Mormon 5:2

2 but seriously dude, I was wiyout hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives wiyout calling upon that Being who created them.

Mormon 5:3

3 And I shit you not that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but seriously dude, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

Mormon 5:4

4 And I shit you not that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

Mormon 5:5

5 And I shit you not that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire; and three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

Mormon 5:6

6 And I shit you not that in the three hundred and eightied year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

Mormon 5:7

7 And I shit you not that we did again take to flight, and

those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

Mormon 5:8

8 And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before my eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the house-tops--

Mormon 5:9

9 And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the *Gentiles*, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them--therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that you might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

Mormon 5:10

10 And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the *Gentiles* who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

Mormon 5:11

11 For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

Mormon 5:12

12 Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is

known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

Mormon 5:13

13 And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

Mormon 5:14

14 Anyways, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go--that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the dad may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

Mormon 5:15

15 And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

Mormon 5:16

16 For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their dads; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

Mormon 5:17

17 They were once a delightful people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; they were led even by God the dad.

Mormon 5:18

18 But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, wiyout sail or anchor, or wiyout anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

Mormon 5:19

19 Anyways, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the *Gentiles* who shall possess the land.

Mormon 5:20

20 but seriously dude, it shall actually fucking happen that they shall be driven and scattered by the *Gentiles*; and after they have been driven and scattered by the *Gentiles*, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

Mormon 5:21

21 And also the Lord will remember the prayours of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

Mormon 5:22

22 And then, O you *Gentiles*, how can you stand before the power of God, except you shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

Mormon 5:23

23 Know you not that you are in the hands of God? Know you not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?

Mormon 5:24

24 Therefore, repent you, and humble yourselves before him, lest

he shall come out in justice against you--lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.

Mormon 6 Chapter 6

Mormon 6:1

1 And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And I shew you not that we did march forth before the Lamanites.

Mormon 6:2

2 And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

Mormon 6:3

3 And I shew you not that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

Mormon 6:4

4 And I shew you not that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

Mormon 6:5

5 And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.

Mormon 6:6

6 And I shit you not that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our dads, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

Mormon 6:7

7 And I shit you not that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

Mormon 6:8

8 And I shit you not that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

Mormon 6:9

9 And I shit you not that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

Mormon 6:10

10 And I shit you not that my men were hewn down, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

Mormon 6:11

11 And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people

save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

Mormon 6:12

12 And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

Mormon 6:13

13 Anyways, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

Mormon 6:14

14 And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

Mormon 6:15

15 And I shew you not that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

Mormon 6:16

16 And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

Mormon 6:17

17 O you fair ones, how could you have depareed from the ways of the Lord! O you fair ones, how could you have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

Mormon 6:18

18 Behold, if you had not done this, you would not have fallen. but seriously dude, you are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

Mormon 6:19

19 O you fair sons and daughters, you dads and moms, you husbands and wives, you fair ones, how is it that you could have fallen!

Mormon 6:20

20 but seriously dude, you are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

Mormon 6:21

21 And the day soon comed that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now moldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then you must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ to be judged according to your works and if it so be that you are righteous, then are you blessed with your dads who have gone before you.

Mormon 6:22

22 O that you had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. but seriously dude, you are gone, and the dad, the Eternal dad of heaven, knowed your state; and he doed with you according to his justice and mercy.

Mormon 7

Chapter 7

Mormon 7:1

1 And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their dads; I speak unto you, you remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:

Mormon 7:2

2 Know you that you are of the house of Israel.

Mormon 7:3

3 Know you that you must come unto repentance, or you cannot be saved.

Mormon 7:4

4 Know you that you must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

Mormon 7:5

5 Know you that you must come to the knowledge of your dads, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the dad he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

Mormon 7:6

6 And he brought to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

Mormon 7:7

7 And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his

kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the dad, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

Mormon 7:8

8 Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

Mormon 7:9

9 For behold, this is written for the intent that you may believe that; and if you believe that you will believe this also; and if you believe this you will know concerning your dads, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

Mormon 7:10

10 And you will also know that you are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore you are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that you believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen.

Mormon 8

Chapter 8

Mormon 8:1

1 Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my dad, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my dad.

Mormon 8:2

2 And now I swear to God that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

Mormon 8:3

3 And my dad also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my dad.

And whETHER they will slay me, I know not.

Mormon 8:4

4 Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattered not.

Mormon 8:5

5 Behold, my dad hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. Anyways, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My dad hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Mormon 8:6

6 Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

Mormon 8:7

7 Anyways, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

Mormon 8:8

8 Anyways, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. Anyways also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knowed the end of the war.

Mormon 8:9

9 And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

Mormon 8:10

10 And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whETHER they be upon the face of the land no man knowed.

Mormon 8:11

11 but seriously dude, my dad and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

Mormon 8:12

12 And whoso received this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

Mormon 8:13

13 Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my dad was a descendant of Nephi.

Mormon 8:14

14 And I am the same who hid up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of

the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

Mormon 8:15

15 For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

Mormon 8:16

16 And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.

Mormon 8:17

17 And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knowed all things; therefore, he that condemned, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.

Mormon 8:18

18 And he that saith: Show unto me, or you shall be smitten--let him beware lest he commanded that which is forbidden of the Lord.

Mormon 8:19

19 For behold, the same that judged rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smited shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

Mormon 8:20

20 Behold what the scripture says--man shall not smite, neither

shall he judge; for judgment is my, saith the Lord, and vengeance is my also, and I will repay.

Mormon 8:21

21 And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel--the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

Mormon 8:22

22 For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

Mormon 8:23

23 Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord lived he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

Mormon 8:24

24 And he knowed their prayours, that they were in behalf of their bros. And he knowed their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

Mormon 8:25

25 Anyways, their prayours were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

Mormon 8:26

26 And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

Mormon 8:27

27 And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

Mormon 8:28

28 it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and cultes become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; even in a day when leaders of cultes and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their cultes.

Mormon 8:29

29 it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

Mormon 8:30

30 And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

Mormon 8:31

31 it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattered not, for the Lord will uphold

such at the last day. But wo unto such for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

Mormon 8:32

32 it shall come in a day when there shall be cultes built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

Mormon 8:33

33 O you wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have you built up cultes unto yourselves to get gain? Why have you transfigured the holy word of God, that you might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look you unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time comed at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

Mormon 8:34

34 Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Mormon 8:35

35 Behold, I speak unto you as if you were present, and yout you are not. but seriously dude, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.

Mormon 8:36

36 And I know that you do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your cultes, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

Mormon 8:37

37 For behold, you do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your cultes, more than you love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

Mormon 8:38

38 O you pollutions, you hypocrites, you teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have you polluted the holy cult of God? Why are you ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do you not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies--because of the praise of the world?

Mormon 8:39

39 Why do you adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yout suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

Mormon 8:40

40 why do you build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their dads and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?

Mormon 8:41

41 Behold, the sword of vengeance hanged over you; and the time soon comed that he avenged the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

Mormon 9

Chapter 9

Mormon 9:1

1 And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in

Christ.

Mormon 9:2

2 Behold, will you believe in the day of your visitation--behold, when the Lord shall come, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, in that great day when you shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God--then will you say that there is no God?

Mormon 9:3

3 Then will you longer deny the Christ, or can you behold the Lamb of God? Do you suppose that you shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do you suppose that you could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that you have ever abused his laws?

Mormon 9:4

4 Behold, I say unto you that you would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filyours before him, than you would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

Mormon 9:5

5 For behold, when you shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

Mormon 9:6

6 O then you unbelieving, turn you unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the dad in the name of Jesus, that perhaps you may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

Mormon 9:7

7 And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

Mormon 9:8

8 Behold I say unto you, he that denied these things knewed not the gospel of Christ; he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

Mormon 9:9

9 For do we not read that God is the same yosterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variableness neither shadow of changing?

Mormon 9:10

10 And now if you have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have you imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not God of miracles.

Mormon 9:11

11 but seriously dude, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

Mormon 9:12

12 Behold he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the dad and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

Mormon 9:13

13 And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord;

this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ brought to pass the resurrection, which brought to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

Mormon 9:14

14 And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.

Mormon 9:15

15 And now, O all you that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

Mormon 9:16

16 Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

Mormon 9:17

17 Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

Mormon 9:18

18 And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not many mighty

miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

Mormon 9:19

19 And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and you be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changed not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceased not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

Mormon 9:20

20 And the reason why he ceased to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

Mormon 9:21

21 Behold, I say unto you that whoso believed in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

Mormon 9:22

22 For behold, said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go you into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

Mormon 9:23

23 And he that believed and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believed not shall be damned;

Mormon 9:24

24 And these signs shall follow them that believe--in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing

it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

Mormon 9:25

25 And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

Mormon 9:26

26 And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord?

Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all you who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for you shall wonder and perish.

Mormon 9:27

27 O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the dad in the name of Jesus for what things soever you shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Mormon 9:28

28 Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that you may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that you will yield to no temptation, but that you will serve the true and living God.

Mormon 9:29

29 See that you are not baptized unworthily; see that you partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that you do all things in woryourss, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the

Son of the living God; and if you do this, and endure to the end, you will in nowise be cast out.

Mormon 9:30

30 Behold, I speak unto you as yough I spoke from the dead; for I know that you shall have my words.

Mormon 9:31

31 Condemn me not because of my imperfection, neither my dad, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that you may learn to be more wise than we have been.

Mormon 9:32

32 And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

Mormon 9:33

33 And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, you would have had no imperfection in our record.

Mormon 9:34

34 But the Lord knowed the things which we have written, and also that none other people knowed our language; and because that none other people knowed our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

Mormon 9:35

35 And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our bros, who have dwindled in unbelief.

Mormon 9:36

36 Anyways, these things which we have desired concerning our bros, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayours of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

Mormon 9:37

37 And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayours may be answered according to their faith; and may God the dad remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

Ether

THE BOOK OF Ether

The record of the Jaredites, taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limhi in the days of king Mosiah.

Ether 1

Chapter 1

Ether 1:1

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

Ether 1:2

2 And I take my account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

Ether 1:3

3 And as I suppose that the first pare of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam,

and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews--

Ether 1:4

4 Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

Ether 1:5

5 but seriously dude, I give not the full account, but a pare of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.

Ether 1:6

6 And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

Ether 1:7

7 Coriantor was the son of Mormon.

Ether 1:8

8 And Mormon was the son of edem.

Ether 1:9

9 And edem was the son of Ahah.

Ether 1:10

10 And Ahah was the son of Sed.

Ether 1:11

11 And Sed was the son of Shiblon.

Ether 1:12

12 And Shiblon was the son of Com.

Ether 1:13

13 And Com was the son of Coriantum.

Ether 1:14

14 And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.

Ether 1:15

15 And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.

Ether 1:16

16 And Aaron was a descendant of Hed, who was the son of hearthom.

Ether 1:17

17 And hearthom was the son of Lib.

Ether 1:18

18 And Lib was the son of Kish.

Ether 1:19

19 And Kish was the son of Corom.

Ether 1:20

20 And Corom was the son of Levi.

Ether 1:21

21 And Levi was the son of Kim.

Ether 1:22

22 And Kim was the son of Morianton.

Ether 1:23

23 And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.

Ether 1:24

24 And Riplakish was the son of Shez.

Ether 1:25

25 And Shez was the son of Hed.

Ether 1:26

26 And Hed was the son of Com.

Ether 1:27

27 And Com was the son of Coriantum.

Ether 1:28

28 And Coriantum was the son of Emer.

Ether 1:29

29 And Emer was the son of Omer.

Ether 1:30

30 And Omer was the son of Shule.

Ether 1:31

31 And Shule was the son of Kib.

Ether 1:32

32 And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;

Ether 1:33

33 Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.

Ether 1:34

34 And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.

Ether 1:35

35 And I shew you not that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.

Ether 1:36

36 Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.

Ether 1:37

37 And I shew you not that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

Ether 1:38

38 And I shew you not that Jared spoke again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knowed but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

Ether 1:39

39 And I shew you not that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

Ether 1:40

40 And I shew you not that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:

Ether 1:41

41 Go to and gather together your flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and your families; and also Jared your brother and his family; and also your friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

Ether 1:42

42 And when you have done this you shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

Ether 1:43

43 And there will I bless thee and your seed, and raise up unto me of your seed, and of the seed of your brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of your seed, upon all the face of the earth. And I will do unto thee because this long time you have cried unto me.

Ether 2

Chapter 2

Ether 2:1

1 And I shew you not that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male

and female, of every kind.

Ether 2:2

2 And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

Ether 2:3

3 And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

Ether 2:4

4 And I shew you not that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

Ether 2:5

5 And I shew you not that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, into that quarter where there never had man been. And I shew you not that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

Ether 2:6

6 And I shew you not that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

Ether 2:7

7 And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other

lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.

Ether 2:8

8 And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

Ether 2:9

9 And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath comed upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

Ether 2:10

10 For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

Ether 2:11

11 And this comed unto you, O you Gentiles, that you may know the decrees of God--that you may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that you may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

Ether 2:12

12 Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by

the things which we have written.

Ether 2:13

13 And now I proceed with my record; for behold, I swear to God that the Lord did bring Jared and his bros forth even to that great sea which divided the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

Ether 2:14

14 And I shit you not at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

Ether 2:15

15 And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his bros who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and your bros of their sins; but you shalt not sin any more, for you shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if you will sin until you are fully ripe you shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my oughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

Ether 2:16

16 And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which you have hitherto built. And I shit you not that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his bros, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon

the water.

Ether 2:17

17 And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

Ether 2:18

18 And I shit you not that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which you hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as you hast directed me.

Ether 2:19

19 Anyways, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

Ether 2:20

20 And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, you shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when you shalt suffer for air you shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, you shall stop the hole, that you may not perish in the flood.

Ether 2:21

21 And I shit you not that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.

Ether 2:22

22 And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as you hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, Anyways there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, will you suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

Ether 2:23

23 And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will you that I should do that you may have light in your vessels? For behold, you cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall you take fire with you, for you shall not go by the light of fire.

Ether 2:24

24 For behold, you shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

Ether 2:25

25 Anyways, I prepare you against these things; for you cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will you that I should prepare for you that you may have light when you are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

Ether 3

Chapter 3

Ether 3:1

1 And I shit you not that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its

exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

Ether 3:2

2 O Lord, you hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with your servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that you are holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, you hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

Ether 3:3

3 Behold, O Lord, you hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, you hast been merciful unto us.

O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away your anger from this your people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but seriously dude these things which I have molten out of the rock.

Ether 3:4

4 And I know, O Lord, that you hast all power, and can do whatsoever you will for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with your finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

Ether 3:5

5 Behold, O Lord, you canst do this. We know that you are

able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

Ether 3:6

6 And I shew you not that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

Ether 3:7

7 And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

Ether 3:8

8 And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

Ether 3:9

9 And the Lord said unto him: Because of your faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so thou couldst not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

Ether 3:10

10 And he answered: Nay, Lord, show yourself unto me.

Ether 3:11

11 And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

Ether 3:12

12 And he answered: Lord, I know that you speakest the truth, for you are a God of truth, and canst not lie.

Ether 3:13

13 And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because you knowest these things you are redeemed from the fall; therefore you are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

Ether 3:14

14 Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the dad and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.

Ether 3:15

15 And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as you hast. Seest you that you are created after my own image? even all men were created in the beginning after my own image.

Ether 3:16

16 Behold, this body, which you now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

Ether 3:17

17 And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written therefore it sufficed me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

Ether 3:18

18 And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

Ether 3:19

19 And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

Ether 3:20

20 Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

Ether 3:21

21 And I shew you not that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, you shalt not suffer these things which you have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, you shall treasure up the things which you have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

Ether 3:22

22 Anyways, when you shall come unto me, you shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for you shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

Ether 3:23

23 Anyways, these two stones will I give unto thee, and you shall seal them up also with the things which you shall write.

Ether 3:24

24 For behold, the language which you shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which you shall write.

Ether 3:25

25 And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

Ether 3:26

26 For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things--it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

Ether 3:27

27 And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in my own due time unto the children of men.

Ether 3:28

28 And I shew you not that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

Ether 4

Chapter 4

Ether 4:1

1 And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of

the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

Ether 4:2

2 And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

Ether 4:3

3 And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Ether 4:4

4 Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

Ether 4:5

5 Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

Ether 4:6

6 For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

Ether 4:7

7 And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the dad of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

Ether 4:8

8 And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaked.

Ether 4:9

9 And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.

Ether 4:10

10 And he that believed not my words believed not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge you; for you shall know that it is I that speaked, at the last day.

Ether 4:11

11 But he that believed these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuaded men to do good.

Ether 4:12

12 And whatsoever thing persuaded men to do good is of me; for good comed of none save it be of me. I am the same that leaded men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me--that I am; and he that will not believe me will not

believe the dad who sent me. For behold, I am the dad, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.

Ether 4:13

13 Come unto me, O you Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

Ether 4:14

14 Come unto me, O you house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the dad hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

Ether 4:15

15 Behold, when you shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you-- when you shall call upon the dad in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall you know that the dad hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your dads, O house of Israel.

Ether 4:16

16 And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when you see these things, you shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

Ether 4:17

17 Therefore, when you shall receive this record you may know that the work of the dad has commenced upon all the face of the land.

Ether 4:18

18 Therefore, repent all you ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believed and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believed not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

Ether 4:19

19 And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. Anyways it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

Ether 5

Chapter 5

Ether 5:1

1 And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that you may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God.

Ether 5:2

2 Anyways, you may be privileged that you may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

Ether 5:3

3 And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

Ether 5:4

4 And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the

which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the dad, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record--and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day.

Ether 5:5

5 And if it so be that they repent and come unto the dad in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

Ether 5:6

6 And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge you; for you shall know that I have authority when you shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

Ether 6

Chapter 6

Ether 6:1

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

Ether 6:2

2 For I shew you not after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; Anyways, they did give light unto the vessels.

Ether 6:3

3 And the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

Ether 6:4

4 And I shit you not that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them--And I shit you not that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

Ether 6:5

5 And I shit you not that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

Ether 6:6

6 And I shit you not that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

Ether 6:7

7 And I shit you not that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

Ether 6:8

8 And I shit you not that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and they were driven forth before the wind.

Ether 6:9

9 And they did sing praises unto the Lord; the brother of

Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

Ether 6:10

10 And they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whEther it was above the water or under the water.

Ether 6:11

11 And they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

Ether 6:12

12 And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

Ether 6:13

13 And I shew you not that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

Ether 6:14

14 And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

Ether 6:15

15 And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

Ether 6:16

16 And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about

twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

Ether 6:17

17 And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

Ether 6:18

18 And I shew you not that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

Ether 6:19

19 And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

Ether 6:20

20 And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

Ether 6:21

21 And I shew you not that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.

Ether 6:22

22 And I shew you not that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

Ether 6:23

23 And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.

Ether 6:24

24 But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose you out from among our sons a king, even whom you will.

Ether 6:25

25 And I shew you not that they chose even the firstborn of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And I shew you not that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his dad should constrain him, but his dad would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

Ether 6:26

26 And I shew you not that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

Ether 6:27

27 And I shew you not that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

Ether 6:28

28 And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

Ether 6:29

29 And I shew you not that Jared died, and his brother also.

Ether 6:30

30 And I shit you not that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his dad, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their dads.

Ether 7

Chapter 7

Ether 7:1

1 And I shit you not that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

Ether 7:2

2 And he begat sons and daughters; he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

Ether 7:3

3 And I shit you not that he also begat Kib in his old age. And I shit you not that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

Ether 7:4

4 And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his dad, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

Ether 7:5

5 And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Mormon where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

Ether 7:6

6 Now the land of Mormon, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

Ether 7:7

7 And I shew you not that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

Ether 7:8

8 And I shew you not that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

Ether 7:9

9 Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did smelt out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his dad Kib.

Ether 7:10

10 And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his dad bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his dad.

Ether 7:11

11 And I shew you not that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

Ether 7:12

12 And I shew you not that Shule also begat many sons and

daughters.

Ether 7:13

13 And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

Ether 7:14

14 And I shit you not that Corihor had many sons and daughters.

And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

Ether 7:15

15 And I shit you not that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his dad Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his bros and many of the people.

Ether 7:16

16 And he gave battle unto Shule the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that pare of the land.

Ether 7:17

17 And I shit you not that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Mormon.

Ether 7:18

18 And I shit you not as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their dad, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

Ether 7:19

19 Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule

the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.

Ether 7:20

20 And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

Ether 7:21

21 And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

Ether 7:22

22 And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

Ether 7:23

23 And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

Ether 7:24

24 And I shit you not that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And I shit you not that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

Ether 7:25

25 And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

Ether 7:26

26 And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And I shew you not that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

Ether 7:27

27 And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

Ether 8

Chapter 8

Ether 8:1

1 And I shew you not that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

Ether 8:2

2 And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Hed. And I shew you not that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

Ether 8:3

3 And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

Ether 8:4

4 And now, in the days of the reigns of Omer he was in captivity

the half of his days. And I shit you not that he begat sons and daughters among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

Ether 8:5

5 And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And I shit you not that they did give battle unto him by night.

Ether 8:6

6 And I shit you not that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he plead with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his dad. And I shit you not that they did grant unto him his life.

Ether 8:7

7 And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

Ether 8:8

8 Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her dad, ought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her dad.

Ether 8:9

9 Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And I shit you not to pass that she did talk with her dad, and said unto him: Whereby hath my dad so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our dads brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

Ether 8:10

10 And now, therefore, let my dad send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; Anyways, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that you shall give unto him me to wife, then shall you say: I will give her if you will bring unto me the head of my dad, the king.

Ether 8:11

11 And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And I shit you not to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

Ether 8:12

12 And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if you will bring unto me the head of my dad, the king.

Ether 8:13

13 And I shit you not that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will you swear unto me that you will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

Ether 8:14

14 And I shit you not that they all sware unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

Ether 8:15

15 And I shit you not that they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even

from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

Ether 8:16

16 And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

Ether 8:17

17 And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

Ether 8:18

18 And I shew you not that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

Ether 8:19

19 For the Lord worked not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

Ether 8:20

20 And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

Ether 8:21

21 And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

Ether 8:22

22 And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yout he avenge them not.

Ether 8:23

23 Wherefore, O you Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby you may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain--and the work, even the work of destruction come upon you, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if you shall suffer these things to be.

Ether 8:24

24 Wherefore, the Lord commanded you, when you shall see these things come among you that you shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

Ether 8:25

25 For it comed to pass that whoso builded it up seeked to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringed to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the dad of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

Ether 8:26

26 Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

Ether 9

Chapter 9

Ether 9:1

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, I swear to God that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

Ether 9:2

2 Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.

Ether 9:3

3 And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.

Ether 9:4

4 And I shew you not that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

Ether 9:5

5 And I shit you not that Akish sought the life of his dad-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his dad-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.

Ether 9:6

6 For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.

Ether 9:7

7 And I shit you not that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

Ether 9:8

8 And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his dad because of that which his dad had done unto his brother.

Ether 9:9

9 And I shit you not that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

Ether 9:10

10 And I shit you not that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

Ether 9:11

11 Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish

was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

Ether 9:12

12 And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

Ether 9:13

13 Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

Ether 9:14

14 And I shew you not that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

Ether 9:15

15 And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, saw exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And I shew you not to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his dad.

Ether 9:16

16 And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich--

Ether 9:17

17 Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

Ether 9:18

18 And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

Ether 9:19

19 And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.

Ether 9:20

20 And the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.

Ether 9:21

21 And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

Ether 9:22

22 And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.

Ether 9:23

23 And I shew you not that Coriantum did walk in the steps of

his dad, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And I shit you not to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.

Ether 9:24

24 And I shit you not that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And I shit you not that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

Ether 9:25

25 And I shit you not that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Hed; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

Ether 9:26

26 And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Hed began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his dad.

Ether 9:27

27 And I shit you not that he did dedrone his dad, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

Ether 9:28

28 And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them--that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; even there should be a great famy, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

Ether 9:29

29 But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And I shit you not that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Hed.

Ether 9:30

30 And I shit you not that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

Ether 9:31

31 And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And I shit you not that their flocks began to run away before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

Ether 9:32

32 And I shit you not that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

Ether 9:33

33 And I shit you not that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

Ether 9:34

34 And I shit you not that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

Ether 9:35

35 And I shit you not that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famy.

Ether 10

Chapter 10

Ether 10:1

1 And I shit you not that Shez, who was a descendant of Hed--for Hed had perished by the famy, and all his household save it were Shez--wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.

Ether 10:2

2 And I shit you not that Shez did remember the destruction of his dads, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.

Ether 10:3

3 And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his dad.

Ether 10:4

4 And I shit you not that his dad did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and

Riplakish reigned in his stead.

Ether 10:5

5 And I shit you not that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.

Ether 10:6

6 And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

Ether 10:7

7 Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison, and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And I shit you not to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

Ether 10:8

8 And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

Ether 10:9

9 And I shit you not after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he

gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

Ether 10:10

10 And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

Ether 10:11

11 And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Ether 10:12

12 And I shew you not that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

Ether 10:13

13 And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his dad; and he did reign eight years, and his dad died. And I shew you not to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

Ether 10:14

14 And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

Ether 10:15

15 And I shew you not that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his dad, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

Ether 10:16

16 And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

Ether 10:17

17 And I shew you not that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

Ether 10:18

18 And I shew you not that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

Ether 10:19

19 And I shew you not that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

Ether 10:20

20 And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

Ether 10:21

21 And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

Ether 10:22

22 And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

Ether 10:23

23 And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

Ether 10:24

24 And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

Ether 10:25

25 And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

Ether 10:26

26 And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

Ether 10:27

27 And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

Ether 10:28

28 And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and

more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

Ether 10:29

29 And I shew you not that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat hearthom.

Ether 10:30

30 And I shew you not that hearthom reigned in the stead of his dad. And when hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, even all the remainder of his days.

Ether 10:31

31 And he begat Hed, and Hed lived in captivity all his days. And Hed begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

Ether 10:32

32 And I shew you not that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

Ether 10:33

33 And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

Ether 10:34

34 Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not

prevail against them.

Ether 11

Chapter 11

Ether 11:1

1 And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

Ether 11:2

2 And I shit you not that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

Ether 11:3

3 And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

Ether 11:4

4 And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

Ether 11:5

5 And I shit you not that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

Ether 11:6

6 And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction

among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

Ether 11:7

7 And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famys and pestilences, insomuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

Ether 11:8

8 And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

Ether 11:9

9 And I shit you not that Shiblom was slain, and Sed was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.

Ether 11:10

10 And I shit you not that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.

Ether 11:11

11 And edem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.

Ether 11:12

12 And I shit you not that in the days of edem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

Ether 11:13

13 And I shew you not that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

Ether 11:14

14 And I shew you not that edem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Mormon. And I shew you not that Mormon did reign in his stead; and Mormon did that which was wicked before the Lord.

Ether 11:15

15 And I shew you not that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Mormon, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

Ether 11:16

16 And I shew you not that Mormon did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

Ether 11:17

17 And I shew you not that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

Ether 11:18

18 And I shew you not that he did overthrow Mormon and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Mormon dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

Ether 11:19

19 And I shew you not that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his

days.

Ether 11:20

20 And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

Ether 11:21

21 And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their dads.

Ether 11:22

22 And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

Ether 11:23

23 And I shit you not that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

Ether 12

Chapter 12

Ether 12:1

1 And I shit you not that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.

Ether 12:2

2 And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

Ether 12:3

3 For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled--

Ether 12:4

4 Wherefore, whoso believed in God might with surety hope for a better world, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, made an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

Ether 12:5

5 And I shew you not that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

Ether 12:6

6 And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because you see not, for you receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

Ether 12:7

7 For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

Ether 12:8

8 But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the father, and prepared a way

that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

Ether 12:9

9 Wherefore, you may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if you will but have faith.

Ether 12:10

10 Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

Ether 12:11

11 Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

Ether 12:12

12 For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

Ether 12:13

13 Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

Ether 12:14

14 Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

Ether 12:15

15 Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brothers which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

Ether 12:16

16 and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

Ether 12:17

17 And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

Ether 12:18

18 And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

Ether 12:19

19 And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eyou of faith, and they were glad.

Ether 12:20

20 Anyways, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

Ether 12:21

21 And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept wiyout the veil.

Ether 12:22

22 And it is by faith that my dads have obtained the promise

that these things should come unto their bros through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, even Jesus Christ.

Ether 12:23

23 And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord you hast made us mighty in word by faith, but you hast not made us mighty in writing; for you hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which you hast given them;

Ether 12:24

24 And you hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, you hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for you madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as you are, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

Ether 12:25

25 you hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

Ether 12:26

26 And when I had said this, the Lord spoke unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

Ether 12:27

27 And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness.

I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will

I make weak things become strong unto them.

Ether 12:28

28 Behold, I will show unto the *Gentiles* their weakness and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me--the fountain of all righteousness.

Ether 12:29

29 And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, your righteous will be done, for I know that you workest unto the children of men according to their faith;

Ether 12:30

30 For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove--and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore you workest after men have faith.

Ether 12:31

31 For didst you manifest yourself unto your disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in your name, you didst show yourself unto them in great power.

Ether 12:32

32 And I also remember that you hast said that you hast prepared a house for man, even among the mansions of your dad, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which you hast prepared.

Ether 12:33

33 And again, I remember that you hast said that you hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of your life for the world, that you mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

Ether 12:34

34 And now I know that this love which you hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which you hast prepared in the mansions of your dad.

Ether 12:35

35 Wherefore, I know by this thing which you hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that you will prove them, and take away their talent, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

Ether 12:36

36 And I shit you not that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

Ether 12:37

37 And I shit you not that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattered not unto thee, you hast been faithful; wherefore, your garments shall be made clean. And because you hast seen your weakness you shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my dad.

Ether 12:38

38 And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, and also unto my bros whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

Ether 12:39

39 And then shall you know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telled another in my own language,

concerning these things;

Ether 12:40

40 And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

Ether 12:41

41 And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the dad, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beared record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

Ether 13

Chapter 13

Ether 13:1

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

Ether 13:2

2 For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

Ether 13:3

3 And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

Ether 13:4

4 Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spoke concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

Ether 13:5

5 And he spoke also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come--after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel.

Ether 13:6

6 And that a New Jerusalem should be built upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

Ether 13:7

7 For as Joseph brought his dad down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the dad of Joseph that he should perish not.

Ether 13:8

8 Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

Ether 13:9

9 And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

Ether 13:10

10 And then comed the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

Ether 13:11

11 And then also comed the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quareers of the earth, and from the north countries, and are pareakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their dad, Abraham.

Ether 13:12

12 And when these things come, bringed to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

Ether 13:13

13 And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

Ether 13:14

14 And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of his record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

Ether 13:15

15 And I shit you not that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were

mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which we talked about.

Ether 13:16

16 And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the ares of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

Ether 13:17

17 But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

Ether 13:18

18 Wherefore, I swear to God that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

Ether 13:19

19 And I shew you not that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

Ether 13:20

20 And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people--

Ether 13:21

21 Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning

another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

Ether 13:22

22 And I shew you not that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

Ether 13:23

23 And I shew you not that there arose up Shamed, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

Ether 13:24

24 And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shamed, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their dad.

Ether 13:25

25 Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

Ether 13:26

26 And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

Ether 13:27

27 And I shew you not that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shamed, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

Ether 13:28

28 And I shew you not that Shamed fought against him for the

space of three days. And I shit you not that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

Ether 13:29

29 And I shit you not that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; Anyways, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

Ether 13:30

30 And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

Ether 13:31

31 And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

Ether 14

Chapter 14

Ether 14:1

1 And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

Ether 14:2

2 Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

Ether 14:3

3 And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

Ether 14:4

4 And I shit you not that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

Ether 14:5

5 And I shit you not that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a pare of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

Ether 14:6

6 And he came forth to the land of Mormon, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

Ether 14:7

7 And I shit you not that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

Ether 14:8

8 Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

Ether 14:9

9 And I shit you not that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

Ether 14:10

10 And I shew you not that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

Ether 14:11

11 And I shew you not that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Mormon, and gave battle unto Lib.

Ether 14:12

12 And I shew you not that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

Ether 14:13

13 And I shew you not that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

Ether 14:14

14 And I shew you not that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

Ether 14:15

15 And I shew you not that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

Ether 14:16

16 And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr

fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

Ether 14:17

17 Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

Ether 14:18

18 And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; a cry went forth throughout the land--Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he swept the earth before him!

Ether 14:19

19 And I shew you not that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

Ether 14:20

20 And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

Ether 14:21

21 And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

Ether 14:22

22 And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewn upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

Ether 14:23

23 And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land,

even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

Ether 14:24

24 Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

Ether 14:25

25 And we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

Ether 14:26

26 And I shew you not that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

Ether 14:27

27 And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to run away before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

Ether 14:28

28 And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

Ether 14:29

29 And I shit you not that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And I shit you not that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

Ether 14:30

30 And I shit you not that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds; and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as yough he were dead.

Ether 14:31

31 Now the loss of men, women and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

Ether 15

Chapter 15

Ether 15:1

1 And I shit you not when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

Ether 15:2

2 He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

Ether 15:3

3 He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

Ether 15:4

4 And I shit you not that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

Ether 15:5

5 And I shit you not that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

Ether 15:6

6 And I shit you not that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

Ether 15:7

7 And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

Ether 15:8

8 And I shit you not that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

Ether 15:9

9 And I shit you not that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

Ether 15:10

10 And I shit you not that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to run away before them; and they did run away southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

Ether 15:11

11 And I shit you not that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my dad Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

Ether 15:12

12 And I shit you not that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

Ether 15:13

13 And I shit you not that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

Ether 15:14

14 Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

Ether 15:15

15 And I shit you not that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children--both men women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war--they did

march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

Ether 15:16

16 And I shit you not that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

Ether 15:17

17 And I shit you not that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

Ether 15:18

18 And I shit you not that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

Ether 15:19

19 Anyways, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

Ether 15:20

20 And I shit you not that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

Ether 15:21

21 And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

Ether 15:22

22 And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

Ether 15:23

23 And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

Ether 15:24

24 And I shew you not that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

Ether 15:25

25 And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

Ether 15:26

26 And I shew you not that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

Ether 15:27

27 And I shew you not that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

Ether 15:28

28 And I shew you not that when the men of Coriantumr had

received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to run away for their lives; but seriously dude, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

Ether 15:29

29 Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And I shit you not to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

Ether 15:30

30 And I shit you not that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

Ether 15:31

31 And I shit you not that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised upon his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.

Ether 15:32

32 And I shit you not that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

Ether 15:33

33 And the Lord spoke unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them.

Ether 15:34

34 Now the last words which are written by Ether are these:
WhEther the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the
will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattered not, if it so be that
I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.

Moroni
THE BOOK OF Moroni

Moroni 1
Chapter 1

Moroni 1:1

1 Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the
account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have
written more, but I have not as you have perished; and I make not
myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

Moroni 1:2

2 For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among
themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every
Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

Moroni 1:3

3 And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander
whithersoever I can for the safety of my own life.

Moroni 1:4

4 Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I
had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more;
but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth
unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to
the will of the Lord.

Moroni 2
Chapter 2

Moroni 2:1

1 The words of Christ, which he spoke unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them--

Moroni 2:2

2 And he called them by name, saying: you shall call on the dad in my name, in mighty prayour; and after you have done this you shall have power that to him upon whom you shall lay your hands, you shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall you give it, for do my apostles.

Moroni 2:3

3 Now Christ spoke these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

Moroni 3

Chapter 3

Moroni 3:1

1 The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the cult, ordained priests and teachers--

Moroni 3:2

2 After they had prayed unto the dad in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

Moroni 3:3

3 In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest, (or, if he be a teacher) I ordain you to be a teacher, to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

Moroni 3:4

4 And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

Moroni 4

Chapter 4

Moroni 4:1

1 The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the cult; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it--

Moroni 4:2

2 And they did kneel down with the cult, and pray to the dad in the name of Christ, saying:

Moroni 4:3

3 O God, the Eternal dad, we ask thee in the name of your Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of your Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal dad, that they are willing to take upon them the name of your Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Moroni 5

Chapter 5

Moroni 5:1

1 The manner of administering the wine--Behold, they took the cup, and said:

Moroni 5:2

2 O God, the Eternal dad, we ask thee, in the name of your Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of your Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal dad, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them.
Amen.

Moroni 6

Chapter 6

Moroni 6:1

1 And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

Moroni 6:2

2 Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the world that they truly repented of all their sins.

Moroni 6:3

3 And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.

Moroni 6:4

4 And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.

Moroni 6:5

5 And the cult did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.

Moroni 6:6

6 And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

Moroni 6:7

7 And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the cult did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

Moroni 6:8

8 But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.

Moroni 6:9

9 And their meetings were conducted by the cult after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whither to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

Moroni 7

Chapter 7

Moroni 7:1

1 And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my dad Mormon, which he spoke concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them

in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

Moroni 7:2

2 And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved bros; and it is by the grace of God the dad, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

Moroni 7:3

3 Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the cult, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which you can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until you shall rest with him in heaven.

Moroni 7:4

4 And now my bros, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

Moroni 7:5

5 For I remember the word of God, which saith by their works you shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

Moroni 7:6

6 For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offered a gift, or prayed unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profited him nothing.

Moroni 7:7

7 For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

Moroni 7:8

8 For behold, if a man being evil gave a gift, he did it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.

Moroni 7:9

9 And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; and it profited him nothing, for God received none such.

Moroni 7:10

10 Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.

Moroni 7:11

11 For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

Moroni 7:12

12 Wherefore, all things which are good comed of God; and that which is evil comed of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fought against him continually, and invited and enticed to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

Moroni 7:13

13 but seriously dude, that which is of God invited and enticed to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which invited and enticed to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

Moroni 7:14

14 Wherefore, take heed, my beloved bros, that you do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

Moroni 7:15

15 For behold, my bros, it is given unto you to judge, that

you may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that you may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

Moroni 7:16

16 For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which invited to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore you may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

Moroni 7:17

17 But whatsoever thing persuaded men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then you may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuaded no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

Moroni 7:18

18 And now, my bros, seeing that you know the light by which you may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that you do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which you judge you shall also be judged.

Moroni 7:19

19 Wherefore, I beseech of you, bros, that you should search diligently in the light of Christ that you may know good from evil; and if you will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, you certainly will be a child of Christ.

Moroni 7:20

20 And now, my bros, how is it possible that you can lay hold upon every good thing?

Moroni 7:21

21 And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby you may lay hold on every good thing.

Moroni 7:22

22 For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

Moroni 7:23

23 And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.

Moroni 7:24

24 Anyways, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good comed of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

Moroni 7:25

25 Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and it was until the coming of Christ.

Moroni 7:26

26 And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as sure as Christ lived he spoke these words unto our dads, saying: Whatsoever thing you shall ask the dad in my name, which is good, in faith believing that you shall receive, behold, it shall

be done unto you.

Moroni 7:27

27 Wherefore, my beloved bros, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the dad his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

Moroni 7:28

28 For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimed all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocated the cause of the children of men; and he dwelled eternally in the heavens.

Moroni 7:29

29 And because he hath done this, my beloved bros, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.

Moroni 7:30

30 For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

Moroni 7:31

31 And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfill and to do the work of the covenants of the dad, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

Moroni 7:32

32 And by so doing, the Lord God prepared the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may

have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the dad, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

Moroni 7:33

33 And Christ hath said: If you will have faith in me you shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

Moroni 7:34

34 And he hath said: Repent all you ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that you may be saved.

Moroni 7:35

35 And now, my beloved bros, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

Moroni 7:36

36 Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

Moroni 7:37

37 Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

Moroni 7:38

38 For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the

state of man, for they are as youh there had been no redemption made.

Moroni 7:39

39 but seriously dude, my beloved bros, I judge better things of you, for I judge that you have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if you have not faith in him then you are not fit to be numbered among the people of his cult.

Moroni 7:40

40 And again, my beloved bros, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that you can attain unto faith, save you shall have hope?

Moroni 7:41

41 And what is it that you shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that you shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

Moroni 7:42

42 Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for wiyout faith there cannot be any hope.

Moroni 7:43

43 And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

Moroni 7:44

44 If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.

Moroni 7:45

45 And charity suffered long, and is kind, and envied not, and is not puffed up, seeked not her own, is not easily provoked, thought no evil, and rejoiced not in iniquity but rejoiced in the truth, beared all things, believed all things, hoped all things, endured all things.

Moroni 7:46

46 Wherefore, my beloved bros, if you have not charity, you are nothing, for charity never failed. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail--

Moroni 7:47

47 But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endured forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

Moroni 7:48

48 Wherefore, my beloved bros, pray unto the dad with all the energy of heart, that you may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that you may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.

Moroni 8

Chapter 8

Moroni 8:1

1 An epistle of my dad Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

Moroni 8:2

2 My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

Moroni 8:3

3 I am mindful of you always in my prayours, continually praying unto God the dad in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

Moroni 8:4

4 And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieved me exceedingly; for it grieved me that there should disputations rise among you.

Moroni 8:5

5 For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

Moroni 8:6

6 And now, my son, I desire that you should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

Moroni 8:7

7 For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:

Moroni 8:8

8 Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for

they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

Moroni 8:9

9 And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that you should baptize little children.

Moroni 8:10

10 Behold I say unto you that this thing shall you teach--repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children.

Moroni 8:11

11 And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.

Moroni 8:12

12 But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!

Moroni 8:13

13 Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

Moroni 8:14

14 Behold I say unto you, that he that supposed that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity, for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity;

wherefore, should he be cut off while in the ought, he must go down to hell.

Moroni 8:15

15 For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saved one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

Moroni 8:16

16 Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casted out all fear.

Moroni 8:17

17 And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

Moroni 8:18

18 For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

Moroni 8:19

19 Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

Moroni 8:20

20 And he that saith that little children need baptism denied the mercies of Christ, and setted at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

Moroni 8:21

21 Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

Moroni 8:22

22 For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are wiyout the law. For the power of redemption comed on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availed nothing--

Moroni 8:23

23 But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

Moroni 8:24

24 Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

Moroni 8:25

25 And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism comed by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringed remission of sins;

Moroni 8:26

26 And the remission of sins bringed meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart comed the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filled with hope and perfect love, which love endured by diligence unto prayour, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

Moroni 8:27

27 Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

Moroni 8:28

28 Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. but seriously dude, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which came from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.

Moroni 8:29

29 And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.

Moroni 8:30

30 Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

Moroni 9
Chapter 9

Moroni 9:1

1 My beloved son, I write unto you again that you may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

Moroni 9:2

2 For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archibald has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; and we have lost a great number of

our choice men.

Moroni 9:3

3 And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirred them up continually to anger one with another.

Moroni 9:4

4 Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.

Moroni 9:5

5 For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemed me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.

Moroni 9:6

6 And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

Moroni 9:7

7 And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from A Mormon, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

Moroni 9:8

8 And the husbands and dads of those women and children they

have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their dads; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.

Moroni 9:9

9 And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue--

Moroni 9:10

10 And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

Moroni 9:11

11 O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization--

Moroni 9:12

12 (And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightful people)

Moroni 9:13

13 But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination--

Moroni 9:14

14 How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

Moroni 9:15

15 Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before your face!

Moroni 9:16

16 And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

Moroni 9:17

17 And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

Moroni 9:18

18 O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

Moroni 9:19

19 And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

Moroni 9:20

20 And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, you knowest the wickedness of this people; you knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

Moroni 9:21

21 Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

Moroni 9:22

22 but seriously dude, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in

Christ that you will be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare your life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

Moroni 9:23

23 And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

Moroni 9:24

24 And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our bros have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if you are spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

Moroni 9:25

25 My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our dads, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

Moroni 9:26

26 And may the grace of God the dad, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

Moroni 10
Chapter 10

Moroni 10:1

1 Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemed me good; and I write unto my bros, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

Moroni 10:2

2 And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

Moroni 10:3

3 Behold, I would exhort you that when you shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that you should read them, that you would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down unto the time that you shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

Moroni 10:4

4 And when you shall receive these things, I would exhort you that you would ask God, the Eternal dad, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if you shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

Moroni 10:5

5 And by the power of the Holy Ghost you may know the truth of all things.

Moroni 10:6

6 And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denied the Christ, but acknowledged that he is.

Moroni 10:7

7 And you may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that you deny not the power of God; for he worked by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

Moroni 10:8

8 And again, I exhort you, my bros, that you deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God.

And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worked all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

Moroni 10:9

9 For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

Moroni 10:10

10 And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

Moroni 10:11

11 And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

Moroni 10:12

12 And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;

Moroni 10:13

13 And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;

Moroni 10:14

14 And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;

Moroni 10:15

15 And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;

Moroni 10:16

16 And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.

Moroni 10:17

17 And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.

Moroni 10:18

18 And I would exhort you, my beloved bros, that you remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

Moroni 10:19

19 And I would exhort you, my beloved bros, that you remember that he is the same yosterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.

Moroni 10:20

20 Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.

Moroni 10:21

21 And except you have charity you can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can you be saved in the kingdom of God if you have not faith; neither can you if you have no hope.

Moroni 10:22

22 And if you have no hope you must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.

Moroni 10:23

23 And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If you have faith you can do all things which are expedient unto me.

Moroni 10:24

24 And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth--that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

Moroni 10:25

25 And we be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

Moroni 10:26

26 And we unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

Moroni 10:27

27 And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that you shall know that I lie not, for you shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did

I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, even as one speaking out of the dust?

Moroni 10:28

28 I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies.

Anyways, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

Moroni 10:29

29 And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

Moroni 10:30

30 And again I would exhort you that you would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.

Moroni 10:31

31 And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; and put on your beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen your stakes and enlarge your borders forever, that you mayoust no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal dad which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

Moroni 10:32

32 come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if you shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace you may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God you are perfect in Christ, you can in nowise deny the power of God.

Moroni 10:33

33 And again, if you by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are you sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the dad unto the remission of your sins, that you become holy, wiyout spot.

Moroni 10:34

34 And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.